



PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : A61K 38/08, 38/10, 39/395, C07K 7/06, 7/08, 16/28, C12N 1/21, 15/11, 15/63, 15/70, 15/79, 15/85</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/40210 (43) International Publication Date: 19 December 1996 (19.12.96)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/09847 (22) International Filing Date: 7 June 1996 (07.06.96) (30) Priority Data: 08/482,982 7 June 1995 (07.06.95) US 08/573,289 15 December 1995 (15.12.95) US (60) Parent Applications or Grants (63) Related by Continuation US 08/573,289 (CIP) Filed on 15 December 1995 (15.12.95) US 08/482,982 (CIP) Filed on 7 June 1995 (07.06.95) (71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): IMCLONE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED [US/US]; 180 Varick Street, New York, NY 10014 (US). MRC COLLABORATIVE CENTRE [GB/GB]; 1-3 Burtonhole Lane, Mill Hill, London NW7 1AD (GB). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): GOLDSTEIN, Neil, I. [US/US]; 26 Kendal Avenue, Maplewood, NJ 07040 (US).</p>	<p>GIORGIO, Nicholas, A. [US/US]; 60 Pearl Street, New York, NY 10004 (US). JONES, Steven, Tarran [GB/GB]; 10 The Close, Radlett, Hertfordshire WD7 8HA (GB). SALDANHA, Jose, William [GB/GB]; 22A Lincoln Way, Enfield, Middlesex EN1 1TE (GB). (74) Agent: FEIT, Irving, N.; Hoffmann & Baron, 350 Jericho Turnpike, Jericho, NY 11753 (US). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i></p>	
<p>(54) Title: ANTIBODY AND ANTIBODY FRAGMENTS FOR INHIBITING THE GROWTH OF TUMORS (57) Abstract Chimerized and humanized versions of anti EGF receptor antibody 225 and fragments thereof for treatment of tumors.</p>		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

**ANTIBODY AND ANTIBODY FRAGMENTS FOR
INHIBITING THE GROWTH OF TUMORS**

This application is a continuation-in-part of Serial No. 08/573,289 filed December 15, 1995, which was a continuation-in-part of Serial No. 08/482,982 filed June 7, 1995, the disclosures of both of which are incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to antibodies and antibody fragments useful in inhibiting the growth of certain tumor cells.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Recent research has uncovered the important role of growth factor receptor tyrosine kinases in the etiology and progression of human malignancies. These biological receptors are anchored by means of a transmembrane domain in the membranes of cells that express them. An extracellular domain binds to a growth factor. The binding of the growth factor to the extracellular domain results in a signal being transmitted to the intracellular kinase domain. The transduction of this signal contributes to the events that are responsible for the proliferation and differentiation of the cells.

Members of the epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor family are important growth factor receptor tyrosine kinases. The first member of the EGF receptor family to be discovered was the glycoprotein having an apparent molecular weight of approximately 165 kD. This glycoprotein, which was described by Mendelsohn *et al.* in U.S. Patent No. 4,943,533, is known as the EGF receptor (EGFR).

The binding of an EGFR ligand to the EGF receptor leads to cell growth. EGF and transforming growth factor alpha (TGF-alpha) are two known ligands of EGFR.

Many receptor tyrosine kinases are found in unusually high numbers on human tumors. For example, many tumors of epithelial origin express increased levels of EGF receptor on their cell membranes. Examples of tumors that express EGF receptors include glioblastomas, as well as cancers of the lung, breast, head and neck, and bladder. The amplification and/or overexpression of the EGF receptors on the membranes of tumor cells is associated with a poor prognosis.

Antibodies, especially monoclonal antibodies, raised against tumor antigens have been investigated as potential anti-tumor agents. Such antibodies may inhibit the growth of tumors through a number of mechanisms. For example, antibodies may inhibit the growth of tumors immunologically through antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC).

Alternatively, antibodies may compete with growth factors in binding to their receptors. Such competition inhibits the growth of tumors that express the receptor.

In another approach, toxins are conjugated to antibodies raised against tumor antigens. The antibody portion directs the conjugate to the tumor, which is killed by the toxin portion.

For example, U.S. Patent No. 4,943,533 describes a murine monoclonal antibody called 225 that binds to the EGF receptor. The patent is assigned to the University of California and licensed exclusively to ImClone Systems Incorporated. The 225 antibody is able to inhibit the growth of cultured EGFR-expressing tumor lines as well as the growth of these tumors *in vivo* when grown as xenografts in nude mice. In a phase I clinical trial, however, no clinical response was observed when up to 300 mg of murine 225 antibodies was administered to humans. See Divgi *et al.*, J. Natl.

Cancer Inst. 83, 97-104 (1991). See Masui *et al.*, Cancer Res. 44, 5592-5598 (1986). More recently, a treatment regimen combining 225 plus doxorubicin or cis-platin exhibited therapeutic synergy against several well established human xenograft models in mice. Basalga *et al.*, J. Natl. Cancer Inst. 85, 1327-1333 (1993).

5 A disadvantage of using murine monoclonal antibodies in human therapy is the possibility of a human anti-mouse antibody (HAMA) response due to the presence of mouse Ig sequences. This disadvantage can be minimized by replacing the entire constant region of a murine (or other non-human mammalian) antibody with that of a human constant region. Replacement of the constant regions of a murine antibody
10 with human sequences is usually referred to as chimerization.

 The chimerization process can be made more effective by also replacing the variable regions - other than the hypervariable regions or the complementarity-determining regions (CDRs), of a murine antibody with the corresponding human sequences. The variable regions other than the CDRs are also known as the variable
15 framework regions (FRs).

 The replacement of the constant regions and non-CDR variable regions with human sequences is usually referred to as humanization. The humanized antibody is less immunogenic (i.e. elicits less of a HAMA response) as more murine sequences are replaced by human sequences. Unfortunately, both the cost and effort increase as
20 more regions of a murine antibodies are replaced by human sequences.

 Another approach to reducing the immunogenicity of antibodies is the use of antibody fragments. For example, an article by Aboud-Pirak *et al.*, Journal of the National Cancer Institute 80, 1605-1611 (1988), compares the anti-tumor effect of an anti-EGF receptor antibody called 108.4 with fragments of the antibody. The tumor
25 model was based on KB cells as xenografts in nude mice. KB cells are derived from human oral epidermoid carcinomas, and express elevated levels of EGF receptors.

Aboud-Pirak *et al.* found that both the antibody and the bivalent F(ab')₂ fragment retarded tumor growth in vivo, although the F(ab')₂ fragment was less efficient. The monovalent Fab fragment of the antibody, whose ability to bind the cell-associated receptor was conserved, did not, however, retard tumor growth.

5 There is, therefore, a continuing need for improved anti-tumor agents that can be efficiently and inexpensively produced, have little or no immunogenicity in humans, are capable of binding to receptors that are expressed in high numbers on tumor cells, and are capable of blocking the binding of such growth factors to such receptors. An object of the present invention is the discovery of such new anti-tumor agents that
10 combine the advantageous features of monoclonal antibodies, antibody fragments and single chain antibodies.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

These and other objects, as will be apparent to those having ordinary skill in the art, have been met by providing a polypeptide lacking the constant region and the
15 variable light chain of an antibody, the polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence N Y G V H (SEQ ID NO: 1), G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R (SEQ ID NO: 2), or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S (SEQ ID NO: 3). The polypeptide may be conjugated to an effector molecule, such as a molecule that inhibits tumor growth. The invention further is directed to DNA encoding such polypeptides.

20 The invention also includes polypeptides consisting of the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.

The invention also includes a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the variable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to a cytotoxic
25 agent such as doxorubicin, taxol, or cis-diamminedichloroplatinum (cisplatin). The

invention further includes a method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of a polypeptide lacking the constant region of the variable light chain of an antibody, the polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D
5 Y N T P F T S R, or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S. Another aspect of the invention is a method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of a polypeptide consisting of the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R, or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.

10 The invention further includes a method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells that express the EGF receptor in a human. The method comprises administering to the human an effective amount of a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the variable region of monoclonal antibody 225, both in the presence of and, in particular, in the absence of, cytotoxic molecules, such as
15 chemotherapeutic agents.

DESCRIPTION OF FIGURES

Figure 1. Effect of 225 on the growth of established A431 tumor xenografts in nude mice. Animals were injected with 10^7 cells in the flank. Treatments, consisting of PBS or 1 mg/animal of 225 twice weekly for 5 weeks, were begun when tumors
20 reached an average volume of 2-300 mm³. Volumes and Remission Index (RI) were determined as described in the "Examples" section.

Figure 2. Effect of 225 and chimerized 225 (C225) on the growth of established A431 tumor xenografts in nude mice. Animals were treated with 1mg/mouse of PBS twice weekly for 5 weeks. A: Average tumor volumes; B: Remission Index. The
25 apparent tumor regression in the PBS control group at day 37 was due to the death of

3 out of the 10 animals within the group at this time and the concomitant decrease in overall tumor volume.

Figure 3. Effect of C225 on the growth of established A431 xenografts in nude mice. Animals were treated with 1mg of C225 or PBS twice weekly for 5 weeks.

5 The average tumor volume of the C225 group showed statistically significant biological effects compared to control (see text) A: Average tumor volumes (asterisks show statistical significance with respect to control); B: Remission Index.

Figure 4. Dose response of C225 on the growth of established A431 xenografts in nude mice. Animals were treated with PBS, 1, 0.5, or 0.25 mg/animal twice weekly for 5 weeks as described in Materials Methods. Animals treated with 1 mg/dose of C225 showed statistically significant biological effects compared to control (see text).

10 A: Average tumor volumes (asterisks define statistical significance with respect to control); B: Remission Index. The drop in RI for the 250 ug dose group on day 47 resulted from the re-appearance of a tumor in an apparent tumor-free animal. (In this
15 instance, the effect of C225 was transient.)

Figure 5. Inhibition of A431 cells by C225 and by heavy chain CDR-1 and heavy chain CDR-2 of monoclonal antibody 225

Figure 6. Inhibition by C225-Doxorubicin conjugate of A431 cells in vivo as a function of concentration.

20 Figure 7. FACS analysis of EGFR expression on human prostatic carcinoma cell lines. LNCaP (human prostatic carcinoma, androgen-dependent), DU 145 and PC-3 (human prostatic carcinoma, androgen-independent), and A431 (human epidermoid carcinoma) cells were removed with EDTA from the growth flasks and stained with C225. Data are presented as MFI (Mean Fluorescence Intensity), an indirect measure

of antigen expression. The results shown in this figure are representative of at least 5 experiments.

Figure 8. Inhibition of EGF-induced phosphorylation of the EGFR by C225. LNCaP, DU 145, and PC-3 monolayers were stimulated with EGF in the presence or absence of C225. Cells were lysed, subjected to SDS PAGE, blotted, and screened with a mouse monoclonal antibody to PTyr (UBI, Lake Placid). Lane A: no additions (basal level of EGFR phosphorylation); Lane B: stimulation of EGFR with 10 ng/ml EGF for 15 minutes at room temperature in the absence of C225; Lane C: stimulation of EGFR with EGF in the presence of 10 ug/ml of C225.

Figure 9. Growth inhibition of established DU 145 xenografts by C225. One million DU 145 cells in matrigel were inoculated into nude mice (males, nu/nu). After tumors reached an average volume of approximately 100 mm³ (day 20), animals were randomized (10 animals per group) and treated with either PBS (control) or C225 (0.5 mg/dose, 10x). Animals were treated for 35 days and followed for an additional 3 weeks. Mice that were tumor-free or carrying small tumors were maintained for an additional 3 months. Significance (shown by astericks in Figure 3A) was determined by a Student's T-test and a p value < 0.5 was considered significant. A: average tumor volume; B: growth characteristics for tumors in the PBS group; C: growth characteristics for tumors in the C225-treated groups.

Figure 10. Effects of C225 on tumor elimination and survival. The complete elimination of tumors during the course of the study was defined by a Remission Index (RI). Animal mortality during the study was considered a treatment failure and included in the analysis. A: Remission Index; B: Survival curve. The empty and filled circles in Figure 10 have the same meanings as in Figure 9.

Figure 11. Schematic representation of the pKN100 mammalian expression vector used for the expression of the kappa light chains of the chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 antibody.

5 Figure 12. Schematic representation of the pG1D105 mammalian expression vector used for the expression of the heavy chains of the chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 antibody.

10 Figure 13. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 4) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 5) sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the M225 antibody. The PCR-clones from which this information was obtained were amplified using the degenerate primer MKV4 (SEQ ID NO: 6)(7).

Figure 14. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 7) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 8) sequences of the heavy chain variable region of the M225 antibody. The PCR-clones from which this information was obtained were amplified using the degenerate primer MHV6 (SEQ ID NO: 9)(7).

15 Figure 15. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 10) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 11) sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the C225 antibody.

Figure 16. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 12) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 13) sequences of the heavy chain variable region of the C225 antibody.

20 Figure 17. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 14) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 15) sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the C225 antibody with the modified leader sequence from the kappa light chain of L7'CL antibody (28).

Figure 18. Typical example of the results of a cell ELISA to measure the binding affinity of chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 (225RK_A/225RH_A) antibodies to epidermal growth factor receptor expressed on the surface of A431 cells.

5 Figure 19. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 16) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 17) sequences of the first version (225RK_A) of the kappa light chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody.

Figure 20. DNA (SEQ ID NO: 18) and peptide (SEQ ID NO: 19) sequences of the first version (225RH_A) of the heavy chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody.

10 Figure 21. Amino acid sequences of the two versions (225RK_A and 225RK_B) of the kappa light chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody (SEQ ID NO: 20), (SEQ ID NO: 21), (SEQ ID NO: 22), (SEQ ID NO: 23). Residues are numbered according to Kabat *et al.* (20). Mouse framework residues conserved in the reshaped human frameworks are highlighted in bold.

15 Figure 22. Amino acid sequences of the five versions (225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, 225RH_E) of the heavy chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody (SEQ ID NO: 24), (SEQ ID NO: 25), (SEQ ID NO: 26), (SEQ ID NO: 27), (SEQ ID NO: 28), (SEQ ID NO: 29), (SEQ ID NO: 30). Residues are numbered according to Kabat *et al.* (20). Mouse framework residues conserved in the reshaped
20 human frameworks are highlighted in bold.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

In one aspect of the invention, a polypeptide lacking the constant region and the variable light chain of an antibody comprises the first and second heavy chain complementarity determining regions of monoclonal antibody 225. These regions
5 have the following amino acid sequences:

CDR-1 N Y G V H (SEQ ID NO: 1)

CDR-2 G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R (SEQ ID NO: 2)

The peptide comprising the first and second complementarity determining regions
10 mentioned above may be obtained by methods well known in the art. For example, the polypeptides may be expressed in a suitable host by DNA that encodes the polypeptides and isolated. The DNA may be synthesized chemically from the four nucleotides in whole or in part by methods known in the art. Such methods include those described by Caruthers in Science 230, 281-285 (1985).

15 The DNA may also be obtained from murine monoclonal antibody 225, which was described by Mendelsohn, *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 4,943,533. This antibody was deposited in the American Type Culture Collection, Bethesda, Maryland on June 7, 1995. (Accession number 11935). Methods for obtaining the variable heavy chain region of antibodies are known in the art. Such methods include, for example, those
20 described in U.S. patents by Boss (Celltech) and by Cabilly (Genentech). See U.S. Patent Nos. 4,816,397 and 4,816,567, respectively.

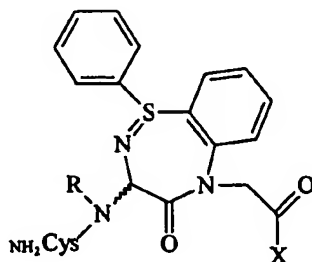
The DNA encoding the protein of the invention may be replicated and used to express recombinant protein following insertion into a wide variety of host cells in a wide variety of cloning and expression vectors. The host may be prokaryotic or
25 eukaryotic.

The polypeptide may contain either N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R, or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S. Alternatively, the polypeptide may contain the sequence N Y G V H, and either of the sequences G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R, or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.

- 5 The polypeptide may also be conjugated to an effector molecule. The effector molecule performs various useful functions such as, for example, inhibiting tumor growth, permitting the polypeptide to enter a cell such as a tumor cell, and directing the polypeptide to the appropriate location within a cell.

10 The effector molecule, for example, may be a cytotoxic molecule. The cytotoxic molecule may be a protein, or a non-protein organic chemotherapeutic agent. Some examples of suitable chemotherapeutic agents include, for example, doxorubicin, taxol, and cisplatin.

Some additional examples of effector molecules suitable for conjugation to the polypeptides of the invention include signal transduction inhibitors, ras inhibitors, and
 15 cell cycle inhibitors. Some examples of signal transduction inhibitors include protein tyrosine kinase inhibitors, such as quercetin (Grazieri *et al.*, Biochim. Biophys. Acta 714, 415 (1981)); lavendustin A (Onoda *et al.*, J. Nat. Prod. 52, 1252 (1989)); and herbimycin A (Ushara *et al.*, Biochem. Int., 41, 831 (1988)). Ras inhibitors include inhibitors of ras farnesylation, such as the benzodiazepine peptidomimetics described
 20 by James *et al.* in Science 260 1937 (1993), which have the formula shown below:



in which R is H or CH₃; and X is Methione, Serine, Leucine, or an ester or amide derivative thereof.

Proteins and non-protein chemotherapeutic agents may be conjugated to the polypeptides by methods that are known in the art. Such methods include, for
5 example, that described by Greenfield *et al.*, Cancer Research 50, 6600-6607 (1990) for the conjugation of doxorubicin and those described by Arnon *et al.*, Adv. Exp. Med. Biol. 303, 79-90 (1991) and by Kiseleva *et al.*, Mol. Biol. (USSR) 25, 508-514 (1991) for the conjugation of platinum compounds.

The invention further includes a modified antibody having the constant region of a
10 human antibody, and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225. These modified antibodies are optionally conjugated to an effector molecule, such as a cytotoxic agent. The variable region other than the hypervariable region may also be derived from the variable region of a human antibody. Such an antibody is said to be humanized. Methods for making humanized antibodies are known in the art.
15 Methods are described, for example, in Winter, U.S. Patent No. 5,225,539.

The most thorough method for humanization of the 225 antibodies is CDR-grafting. As described in Example IV, the regions of the mouse antibody that are directly involved in binding to antigen, the complementarity determining region or CDRs, are grafted into human variable regions to create "reshaped human" variable
20 regions. These fully humanized variable regions are then joined to human constant regions to create complete "fully humanized" antibodies. In order to create a fully humanized antibody that binds well to antigen, it is essential to carefully design the reshaped human variable regions. The human variable regions into which the 225 antibodies CDRs will be grafted must be carefully selected, and it is usually necessary
25 to make a few amino acid changes at critical positions within the framework regions (FRs) of the human variable regions.

The reshaped human H225 variable regions, as designed, include up to a single amino acid change in the FRs of the selected human kappa light chain variable region and as many as twelve amino acid changes in the FRs of the selected human heavy chain variable region. The DNA sequences coding for these reshaped human H225 heavy and kappa light chain variable region genes are joined to DNA sequences coding for the human $\gamma 1$ and human κ constant region genes, respectively. The reshaped human H225 antibody is then expressed in mammalian cells and tested, in comparison with mouse M225 antibody, and chimeric C225 antibody for binding to human EGF receptor expressed on the surface of A431 cells.

10 The variable region of the antibody outside of the hypervariable region may also be derived from monoclonal antibody 225. In such case, the entire variable region is derived from murine monoclonal antibody 225, and the antibody is said to be chimerized, i.e., C225. Methods for making chimerized antibodies are known in the art. Such methods include, for example, those described in U.S. patents by Boss
15 (Celltech) and by Cabilly (Genentech). See U.S. Patent Nos. 4,816,397 and 4,816,567, respectively.

The constant region of the modified antibodies may be of any human class, i.e., IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD, and IgE. Any subclass of the above classes is also suitable, e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4, in which IgG1 is preferred.

20 Any of the effector molecules mentioned above in connection with conjugation to a polypeptide can also be conjugated to chimeric or humanized antibodies of the invention. Doxorubicin, taxol, and cisplatin are preferred.

The polypeptides and antibodies of the invention significantly inhibit the growth of tumor cells when administered to a human in an effective amount. The optimal
25 dose can be determined by physicians based on a number of parameters including, for example, age, sex, weight, severity of the condition being treated, the active

ingredient being administered, and the route of administration. In general, a serum concentration of polypeptides and antibodies that permits saturation of EGF receptors is desirable. A concentration in excess of approximately 0.1 nM is normally sufficient. For example, a dose of 100 mg/m² of C225 provides a serum concentration
5 of approximately 20 nM for approximately eight days.

As a rough guideline, doses of antibodies may be given weekly in amounts of 10-300 mg/m². Equivalent doses of antibody fragments should be used at more frequent intervals in order to maintain a serum level in excess of the concentration that permits saturation of EGF receptors.

10 Some suitable routes of administration include intravenous, subcutaneous, and intramuscle administration. Intravenous administration is preferred.

The peptides and antibodies of the invention may be administered along with additional pharmaceutically acceptable ingredients. Such ingredients include, for example, immune system stimulators and chemotherapeutic agents, such as those
15 mentioned above.

It has now surprisingly been found that, unlike the murine 225 antibody, the chimeric and humanized antibodies significantly inhibit tumor growth in humans, even in the absence of other anti-tumor agents, including other chemotherapeutic agents, such as cisplatin, doxorubicin, taxol, and their derivatives. Significant
20 inhibition may mean the shrinkage of tumors by at least 20%, preferably 30%, and more preferably 50%. In optimal cases, 90% and even 100% shrinkage of tumors is achieved. Alternatively, significant inhibition may mean an RI greater than 0.3, preferably greater than 0.4, and more preferably greater than 0.5.

The significant inhibition of tumor growth and/or increase in RI manifests itself in numerous ways. For example, there is an increase in life expectancy and/or a stabilization of previously aggressive tumor growth.

5 In cases where the side effects of chemotherapeutic agents are too severe for a patient to continue such treatments, C225 may be substituted for the chemotherapeutic agents, and achieve comparable results.

For example, the results shown in Example III-1 indicate that, while the *in vitro* inhibitory properties of 225 and C225 are comparable, the *in vivo* effects of the antibodies differ considerably. Antibody isotype does not play a significant role in
10 the differences seen between 225 and C225 (e.g., mouse IgG1 vs. human IgG1). A recent report indicates that neither 225 nor C225 induced complement mediated lysis to any degree and the ADCC reactivity of these antibodies appeared to be species specific. Naramura *et al.*, Immunol. Immunother. 37, 343-349 (1993). Therefore, if
15 inhibition of A431 xenografts was mediated through immune responses, 225 should be the more potent antibody because of its ability to activate the murine effector cells involved in ADCC. The opposite is, in fact, the case.

In addition, there were differences in the way individual animals within a group responded to treatment with either 225 or C225. It appeared that C225 alone was very effective in inducing complete tumor remission at the 1 mg dose whereas 225 at this
20 dose level showed marginal effects. In Experiments 2 and 3 of Example III-1, about 40% of the animals were tumor free at the end of each study. The animals responding in those groups usually had smaller tumors at the beginning of the treatment protocols, once again indicating that initial tumor burden plays a role in the biological efficacy of C225. Significantly, animals treated with either 225 or C225 showed
25 greater survival characteristics compared to the PBS control group in all studies.

As demonstrated in Example III-2, prostatic carcinoma is also an appropriate target for anti-EGFR immunotherapeutic intervention with C225. Since the metastatic prostatic carcinoma cells coexpress TGF- α as well as the EGFR, late stage prostatic carcinoma is an especially appropriate target.

5 Example III-2 describes the biological effects of C225 on the activation of the EGFR in cultured human prostatic carcinoma cells and the growth of prostate xenografts in nude mice. The *in vitro* experiments were designed to determine the expression levels of the EGFR on three human prostatic carcinoma cell lines and the ability of C225 to block the functional activation of the receptor. Figure 7 shows the
10 results of a FACS analysis comparing EGFR expression on A431 cells to levels seen on LNCaP (androgen-dependent) and PC-3 and DU 145 (androgen-independent) cells. Both PC-3 (MFI = 135) and DU-145 (MFI = 124) cells expressed about 7 fold less receptor than A431 cells (MFI = 715). Since MFI is an indirect measure of antigen density, both PC-3 and DU 145 cells would appear to express about 10^5 receptors
15 each. LNCaP cells, on the other hand, expressed very low levels of surface receptor (MFI = 12).

As shown above, the EGFR expressed by A431 cells can be stimulated by exogenously added ligand (EGF) and C225 can abrogate activation of the receptor. Figure 8 shows the results of similar studies with the prostatic lines. The addition of
20 EGF to LNCaP, PC-3, and DU 145 induced phosphorylation of the EGFR that was blocked by C225 with high efficiency. These data indicate that C225 effectively inhibits ligand-activated EGFR signalling pathways, and has anti-tumor activity when EGFR activation is required for growth *in vivo*.

The ability of C225 to inhibit tumor growth *in vivo* was tested against established
25 DU 145 xenografts in athymic nude mice. DU 145 cells were inoculated at 10^6 cells per animals in combination with matrigel. Tumors developed in 100% of the animals within 20 days. Preliminary experiments had shown that a dose level of 1 mg (10x)

induced significant tumor inhibition. For these studies, C225 was injected at a 0.5 mg (10x) dose level.

As shown in Figure 9, C225 alone was effective in significantly inhibiting the growth of established DU 145 xenografts ($p < 0.5$). The overall therapeutic effect was apparent by day 34 and significant with respect to the control group by day 36 (Figure 9A). All tumors in the sham-injected group continued to grow throughout the course of the study (Figure 9B) but the anti-tumor effect of the antibody was seen throughout the study (Figure 9C). Although spontaneous remissions in PBS-treated animals were never seen in this model, 60% of the C225 treated animals were tumor free by day 60 (Figure 10A) and remained tumor-free for an additional 90 days after termination of the antibody injections. In addition, tumors that did not disappear in the C225 group grew extremely slowly after treatment was stopped (day 55; Figure 9C) suggesting a long-lived effect of the antibody. There was no significant difference in the survival curves during the course of treatment (Figure 10B).

Example III-2 clearly shows that C225 was capable of inhibiting the growth of established, EGFR-positive DU 145 xenografts and could induce long-lived tumor remissions in a high percentage of treated animals. These results could not be predicted from the *in vitro* data.

Not all cell lines that express EGFR at levels similar to those seen in DU 145 cells respond to C225 *in vivo*. For example, KB cells (human epidermoid carcinoma) express about 2×10^5 EGFR per cell and activation of the receptors by EGF was blocked by C225 *in vitro*. However, KB xenografts did not respond to a treatment regimen including a 1 mg dose (x10) of C225, a level able to induce complete remissions in 100% of animals carrying established A431 tumors. As surprisingly shown in Example III-2, treatment of mice inoculated with DU 145 tumor cells with C225 alone at a 0.5 mg dose (x10) led to significant tumor regressions in all treated animals. Sixty percent of the mice were in complete remission following termination

of the treatment. Blockage of receptor activation by C225 also has clinical implications for the treatment of metastatic prostatic carcinoma in humans, especially during the late stages of the disease.

5

EXAMPLES

Example I. Materials

Example I-1. Cell Lines and Media

A431 cells were routinely grown in a 1:1 mixture of Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium and Ham's F-12 supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, 2mM L-glutamine, and antibiotics.

10

The androgen-independent and dependent human prostatic carcinoma cell lines (DU 145, PC-3 and LNaP) were obtained from the ATCC (Rockville MD) and routinely maintained in RPMI 1640 medium (Sigma, St. Louis, MO) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (Intergen, Purchase NY) and 2 mM L-glutamine (Sigma). Cells were checked regularly for the presence of mycoplasma.

15

Example I-2. Preparation and Purification of M225 and C225

The 225 antibody was grown as ascites in pristane primed Balb/c mice. Ascites fluid was purified by HPLC (ABX and Protein G) and determined to be >95% pure by SDS PAGE.

Human clinical grade C225 was grown in proprietary serum free medium in 300 liter lots. After clarification, the concentrated broth was purified on a series of

20

chromatographic columns and vialled under aseptic conditions. Purity was determined to be >99% by SDS PAGE.

Example I-3. Preparation of Doxorubicin-C225 Conjugates

C225 doxorubicin conjugates (C225-DOX) were prepared using a modification of the method described by Greenfield *et al.*, Cancer Research 50, 6600-6607 (1990). Briefly, Doxorubicin was reacted with the crosslinking agent PDPH (3-[2-pyridyldithio]propionyl hydrazide) (Pierce Chemical Co.) to form the acyl hydrazone derivative doxorubicin 13-[3-(2-pyridyldithiol) propionyl] hydrazone hydrochloride. C225 was thiolated with the reagent N-succinimydyl 3-(pyridyldithio) propionate and reacted with doxorubicin hydrazone to form a conjugate containing a hydrazide as well as a disulfide bond. The complex was purified by gel filtration at neutral pH. The C225-doxorubicin conjugate was stable at neutral to alkaline pH (pH 7-8) and was stored at 4C. The conjugate was readily hydrolyzed at pH 6, releasing active Doxorubicin.

Example I-4. Chimerization of Antibody 225

Example I-4A. Cloning of H and L Chain cDNAs

The media containing the 225 mouse hybridoma cell line was expanded to one liter in tissue culture flasks. Total cell RNA was prepared by lysing washed cells in guanidine isothiocyanate containing 2-mercaptoethanol, shearing the solution in a dounce homogenizer to degrade cell DNA and layering the preparation on a 10 ml cesium chloride cushion. After centrifugation at 24,000 rpm for 16 hr. the pellet was resuspended in Tris-EDTA (TE) buffer and precipitated with ethanol. The poly A(+) mRNA fraction was isolated by binding to and elution from oligo dT cellulose. A cDNA library was prepared using the poly A (+) mRNA as template and oligo dT as the primer. The second strand was synthesized by nick translation using RNase H and

DNA polymerase I. The double-stranded DNA was passed through a 2 ml Sepharose G75 column to remove oligo dT and small entities. The purified DNA was then ligated into a polylinker with the sequence:

5' -AATTCTCGAGTCTAGA -3'

(SEQ ID NO: 31)

5
10
15
which encodes an Eco RI four base sticky end for ligation to the cloning vector, and the restriction sites for Xho I and Xba I for subsequent manipulations of the cDNAs. The ligated cDNA was then size-selected by electrophoresis on a 5% polyacrylamide gel. The appropriate size fractions (~1500 bp for H chain and ~900 bp for L chain cDNA) were electroeluted from gel slices and ligated to Eco RI-digested lambda gt10 phage DNA. Libraries were generated by packaging the ligation products in vitro and plating recombinant phage on lawns of E. coli strain C600 HFL. Phage containing H and L cDNAs were identified by phage filter lifts that were hybridized with radiolabeled oligonucleotides of the mouse kappa and gamma constant region. The identified phage were restriction mapped.

20
25
Isolates with the longest cDNA inserts were subcloned in a plasmid vector (Eco RI-Bam HI fragments for heavy (H) chain V regions and Eco RI-Hpa I fragments for light (L) chain variable (V) regions) and DNA sequenced. The subcloned fragments contained the complete V region and a small portion of associated mouse constant (C) region. A total of eight L chain cDNAs were sequenced and represent four different mRNAs. Three full-length H chain cDNAs were sequenced encoding the same V region and a portion of the correct gamma 1 C region. Three other isolates containing gamma 2a sequence were also identified but were not studied further. To identify the correct L chain cDNA, a sample of mouse 225 antibody was sequenced by automated Edman degradation after first separating the H and L chains by SDS reducing gel electrophoresis and blotting to membranes.

The sequence obtained for the L chain matched one of the cDNAs. This isolate was rearranged to J5 and was found to be 91% homologous with Vk T2. The H chain V region was found to be 96% homologous with VH 101 subgroup VII-1.

Example I-4B. Adaption of cDNAs and Construction of Expression Vectors

5

The V regions were adapted for expression by ligating the body of each to a synthetic DNA duplex encoding the sequence between the closest unique restriction site to the V/C junction and the exact boundary of the V region. To this was ligated a second, short intron sequence which, when joined, restores a functional splice donor site to the V region. At the end of the intron for the L chain is a Bam HI site and at the end of the H chain intron is a Hind III site. The adapted L Chain V region was then isolated as a Xba I-Bam HI fragment (the Xba I site was in the original linker used for cDNA cloning) while the adapted H chain V region was isolated as a Xho I-Hind III fragment.

15 The expression vector pdHL2, containing human kappa and human gamma 1 constant regions, was used for insertion of the adapted L chain V region. The resulting plasmid, pdHL2-Vk(225), was then digested with Xba I and Bam HI and used for the insertion of the adapted L chain V region. The resulting plasmid, pdHL2-Vk(225), was then digested with Xho I and Hind III and used for the insertion of the adapted H chain V region. The final vector was identified by restriction mapping and identified as pdHL2-ch225.

20

Example I-4C. Expression of Chimeric 225 in Transfected Hybridoma Cells

The pdHL2-ch225 plasmid was introduced into hybridoma Sp2/0 Ag14 cells by protoplast fusion. The bacteria harboring the plasmid were grown to an optical density of 0.5 at 600 nm at which time chloramphenicol was added to arrest growth and amplify the plasmid copy number. The following day the bacteria were treated

25

with lysozyme to remove the cell wall and the resulting protoplasts were fused to the hybridoma cells with polyethylene glycol 1500. After fusion, the cells were grown in antibodies to kill any surviving bacteria and were plated in 96-well plates. The selection medium (containing methotrexate (MTX) at 0.1 μ M) was added after 24-48
5 hours to allow only the transfected cells to grow, by virtue of their expression of the marker gene (dehydrofolate reductase) present on the expression plasmid.

After two weeks, several MTX-resistant clones were obtained that were then tested for antibody expression. Culture supernatants were added to wells coated with an anti-human Ig (Fc-specific) antibody as the capture reagent. The detection system
10 was an HRP-conjugated goat anti-human kappa antibody. The majority of clones were found to be secreting human antibody determinants and the three highest producers were further adapted to grow at 1 μ M and then 5 μ M methotrexate. Two of the lines, designated SdER6 and SdER14, continued to grow well at the higher levels of MTX and were subcloned by limiting dilution. The productivity of the subclones
15 was tested by seeding cells at 2×10^5 cells per ml in growth medium and measuring the accumulated antibody on day 7. The two highest producers from the first subcloning were lines SdER6.25 and SdER14.10. These were subcloned a second time and the final three candidate lines were designated SdER6.25.8, SdER6.25.49, and SdER14.10.1. Clone SdER6.25.8 was selected based on expression of antibody.

20 Example I-5. Analysis of C225 Expressed from SdER6.25.8

Studies with antibody produced from the clone SdER6.25.8 were conducted to characterize the nature of the antibody. Culture supernatants from the transfected cell clones expressing C225 antibody were tested for their ability to bind human tumor
25 cells expressing different levels of EGF receptor. A431 epidermal carcinoma cells (high expressors) were intensely stained while M24 melanoma cells (expressing 10-fold fewer receptors) were moderately stained. A neuroblastoma line, IMR-32, which does not express EGF receptor, was not stained.

Example I-6. Effects of Chimerizing the C225 Antibody

The apparent K_d was found to be 0.1 and 0.201 nM for C225 and 1.17 and 0.868 nM for 225, using ELISA and SPR methods, respectively (Table 1). These results were similar to published data for C225 ($K_d = 0.39$ nM) and 225 ($K_d = 0.79$ nM, $K_d = 1$ nM) as shown in Table 1. The antibodies were found to inhibit the proliferation of cultured A431 cells to the same extent (Table 2). In addition, 225 and C225 were able to block EGF-induced phosphorylation of the EGFR in A431 cells. These results indicated that chimerization of 225 did not affect the biological properties of the antibody and increased the relative binding affinity of C225 for EGFR.

10 Example II. Methods and Assays

Example II-1. Relative Affinity Measurements by ELISA

The relative binding affinity of the antibodies was determined using an ELISA protocol previously described by Lokker *et al.* J. Immunol. 146, 893-898 (1991). Briefly, A431 cells (10^4 or 10^5 per well) were grown in 96 well microtiter plates overnight at 37°C. Cells were fixed with 3.7% neutral buffered formalin for 10 minutes at room temperature. After washing three times with PBS, wells were blocked with 1% bovine serum albumin in Hank's balanced salt solution for two hours at room temperature. C225 or 225 were added to the wells at various concentrations (serial dilutions starting at 50 nM). After a two hour incubation at 37°C, plates were extensively washed with PBS and incubated with goat anti-human antibody (Sigma, St Louis MO; 1:1000) for one hour at 37°C. Plates were washed and the chromogen TMB (Kirkegaard and Perry, Gaithersburg MD) added for 30 minutes in the dark. The color reaction was stopped with 1 N sulfuric acid and the plates read in an ELISA reader at 450 nm. The relative binding affinity is defined as the concentration giving the half maximal OD.

Example II-2. Affinity Constants of 225 and C225 using Surface Plasmon Resonance Technology (SPR)

The apparent binding affinities of M225 and C225 were also determined using the InAcore™ (Pharmacia Biosensor, Piscataway NJ; manufacturer's application note 301 and O'Shannessy *et al.*, Anal. Biochem. 212, 457-468 (1993). Briefly, soluble recombinant EGFR was immobilized on sensor chips via amino groups as described by the manufacturer. Real time binding parameters of 225 and C225 to EGFR was established at various antibody concentrations and the apparent K_d was calculated from the binding rate constants obtained via non linear fitting using Biaevaluation™ 2.0 Software.

Example II-3. *In vitro* Inhibition of Cell Growth with 225 and C225

The *in vitro* inhibitory activity of 225 and C225 was determined by plating A431 cells (300-500 per well) in 96 microtiter plates in complete growth medium. After adding C225 or 225 in various concentrations (4 replicates per concentration), plates were incubated for 48 hours at 37°C followed by a 24 hour pulse with 3H-thymidine. Cells were harvested, collected on filter mats and counted in a Wallace Microbeta scintillation counter to determine percent inhibition. Percent inhibition compares the decrease in 3H thymidine incorporation of antibody-treated cells with cells grown in the absence of antibody.

Example II-4. Animal Studies

Athymic nude mice (nu/nu; 6-8 weeks old females) were obtained from Charles River Laboratories. Animals (10 mice per treatment group) were innoculated in the right flank with 10⁷ A431 cells in 0.5 ml of Hank's balanced salt solution. Mice were observed until tumors were visible (about 7-12 days) and had reached an average volume of 150-300 mm³. At that time, antibody therapy was begun. The therapy

included twice weekly intraperitoneal injections (varying concentrations in 0.5 ml of PBS) over 5 weeks. U 1 animals received injections of PBS. Tumors were measured two times per week and volumes calculated using the following formula: $\pi/6 \times \text{larger diameter} \times (\text{smaller diameter})^2$. Animals were followed at least 3 weeks after the final antibody treatment (8 weeks after the start of therapy) at which time U 1 and test animals with extremely large tumors were euthanized. Tumor free animals and animal with small tumors were followed for an additional 2-3 months. Statistical analysis of tumor growth in each of the studies was done using a two tailed Student's T-test.

10 In addition to demonstrating growth inhibitory effects of the antibodies, many animals were found to be in complete remission (i.e., tumor free). This biological effect was quantified as a Remission Index (RI), defined as the number of tumor free mice/total animals within a treatment group. Termination occurred at the time of euthanasia for animals with large tumors, and 2-3 months later for other animals.

15 Animals that died during treatment were excluded from this analysis. For example, one complete remission among eight surviving animals equals an RI of 0.125.

Example III. Biological Activity of C225

Example III-1. The Capacity of the Antibodies to Inhibit the Growth of A431 Xenografts in Nude Mice

20 Animals were inoculated in the flanks with A431 cells. Tumors of 150-300 mm³ appeared by day 7-10. Referring to Experiments 1-4 in Table 3, animals were then randomized and injected with PBS or 225 (Exp 1), PBS, 225, or C225 (Exp 2); and PBS or C225 (Exp 3 and 4). In Experiments 1-3, animals received injections of 1 mg of antibody (in 0.5 ml PBS) twice weekly over 5 weeks for a total dose of 10 mg of

25 antibody per animal. In Exp 4, animals received one of three possible doses: 1, 0.5,

and 0.25 mg/injection for total doses of 10, 5, and 2.5 mg, respectively. Tumors were measured twice weekly over the course of treatment. Tumor-free animals and animals with small tumors continued to be monitored for 2-3 months following the sacrificing of animals with large tumors.

5 Figure 1 shows the effect of 225 on the growth of A431 tumors in nude mice (Exp 1). The average tumor volumes of the experimental and U 1 groups were similar (Figure 1A) and only one complete tumor remission was observed (Remission Index (RI) of 0.17; Figure 1B and Table 3). A comparison of 225 and C225 is shown in Figure 2 (Exp 2 in Table 3). Although there was no significant difference in average
10 tumor size between the groups, animals treated with C225 had an RI of 0.44 (i.e., 4/9 complete remissions) compared to an RI of 0.11 for 225 (Figure 2B and Table 3). The apparent tumor regression for the PBS U 1 group at day 37 (Figure 2A) was attributable to the death of 3/10 animals at this time and the concomitant decrease in overall tumor volume. A similar RI for C225 was seen in Exp 3 (Figure 3B; RI =
15 0.4). In addition, inhibition of tumor growth by C225 was also found to be significant when compared to the growth of xenografts in PBS-treated mice (Figure 3A; $p < 0.02$ following day 32).

Because a number of animals receiving C225 showed tumor regressions at the 1 mg/injection level, the lowest biologically effective dose was defined. Figure 4 shows
20 the results of the dose reponse experiment (Exp 4). All animals receiving 1 mg/injection underwent complete remission and remained tumor free for over 100 days following termination of the antibody injections (Figure 4A and B; Table 3). These results are highly significant with p values varying from $p < 0.006$ on day 33 to $p < 0.0139$ on day 59. In Experiments 2 and 3, about 40% of the animals receiving
25 the 1 mg dose of C225 underwent complete remission although C225 showed significant tumor regression in Exp 3 (Figure 3). The increased efficacy of the 1 mg dose in Experiments 3 and 4 in significantly reducing average tumor volume versus U 1 may have occurred because mice carrying smaller tumors were used at the start of the

treatment protocols in these experiments (152 mm³ [Exp 4] and 185 mm³ [Exp 3] vs. 267 mm³ [Exp.2]). These data suggest that the clinical effectiveness of C225 may be related to tumor burden.

At the 0.5 mg dose in Exp 4, the overall inhibition of tumor growth was not statistically significant because of the large variations in tumor volume among animals of both the PBS and the 0.5 mg groups. However, the RI was high for the 0.5 mg group (RI = 0.63; Figure 4b and Table 2) indicating that the antibody induced anti-tumor responses in individual animals. Interestingly, the 0.5 mg dose group in Exp 4 had a higher RI than the 1 mg dose group in Exp 3. This result may be attributed to the effects of tumor burden. Although the average starting volume for tumors in the 0.5 mg dose group was 160 mm³, there was great variability in tumor size among individual animals. A number of animals carried smaller tumors (<100 mm³) that are most susceptible to the biological effect of C225. At 0.25 mg dose, average tumor growth appeared to be greater than the PBS U 1. This was due to the inclusion within this group of two animals with large tumors (760 and 1140 mm³) at the start of the treatments which resulted in an increase in average tumor volume during the course of Exp 4. Overall, there is no significant difference between these groups but it is interesting to note that one animal (1/8) at the 0.25 mg dose was tumor free at the end of the study (RI = 0.13). At day 47, there appeared to be a drop in the RI. At this time, a tumor reappeared in one mouse that had apparently undergone a complete remission. In this single case, C225 had a transient biological effect. This animal is not included in Table 3. As with the 1 mg dose group, tumor-free animals in the 0.5 and 0.25 mg groups remained tumor free a minimum of 2-3 months after the PBS control mice were sacrificed.

Table 1. DISSOCIATION CONSTANTS (K_d) FOR 225 AND C225 AS DETERMINED BY VARIOUS METHODS

	METHOD*	RECEPTOR FORM	K _d (nM)		REFERENCE
			225	C225	
5	Scatchard	A431 Lysates	1	nd	Cancer Res. 53, 4322-4328 (1993)
10	Scatchard	M24met cells	0.78	0.39	Immunol. Immunother. 37, 343-349 (1993)
	ELISA	Fixed A431 cells	1.17	0.147	
15	SPR	Soluble receptor	0.868	0.201	

20 * Scatchard results are expressed as K_d, SPR results as apparent K_d, and ELISA data as the apparent affinity, a relative measure of the K_d. See Materials and Methods for description of the generation of the ELISA and SPR data.

**Table 2. *IN VITRO* INHIBITION OF A431 CELLS
BY C225 AND 225**

5	<u>ug/ml of Antibody</u>	<u>% INHIBITION</u>	
		<u>C225</u>	<u>225</u>
	10	50	50
	5	26	24
	2	25	28
	1	22	21

10 The results shown in Table 2 represent a typical experiment in which the ability of 225 and C225 to inhibit the growth of A431 was tested *in vitro*. Details are described above. Percent inhibition is defined as the decrease in 3-H thymidine incorporation of antibody-treated samples (4 replicates/concentration) versus cells growing in the absence of antibody.

15 Table 3 represents a comparison of complete tumor remissions in athymic nude mice carrying established A431 tumors following treatment with PBS, 225, or C225 twice weekly for 5 weeks. Animals were treated with 1 mg of antibody in 0.5 ml of PBS by the intraperitoneal route except for study 4, which is a dose response experiment in which mice were given 1, 0.5, or 0.25 mg/injection. Tumor

20 measurements were done as described above. This chart describes the RI at the time when the animals (PBS control and test) carrying large tumors were euthanized. All animals showing complete remissions or small tumors were followed for an additional 2-3 months. The differences in total number of animals results from death of mice within these treatment groups during the course of the experiments.

Table 3. REMISSION INDICES FOR ANIMALS INNOCULATED WITH A431 CELLS AND TREATED WITH 225 OR C225

	EXP	TREATMENT	# REMISSIONS/	REMISSION
			TOTAL*	INDEX**
5	1	225	1/6	0.17
		PBS	0/4	0
	2	225	1/9	0.11
10		C225	4/9	0.44
		PBS	0/4	0
	3	C225	4/10	0.40
15		PBS	0/3	0
		C225: 1	8/8	1.0
	4	C225: 0.5	5/8	0.63
		C225: 0.25	1/8	0.13
		PBS	0/4	0

* Tumor free animals/total number of surviving animals. Differences in the number of animals presented are the result of mice dying during the five week course of the various treatment regimens, and these were not included in the statistical analysis.

20 ** The Remission Index (RI) is defined as the fraction of mice that were tumor free on the day when the PBS control mice and test animals with large tumors were euthanized. A complete remission at the 0.25 mg dose level showed a subsequent recurrence of tumor (day 47).

Example III-2. Inhibition of Growth of Established Human Prostatic Carcinoma Xenografts in Nude Mice

Example III-2A. FACS Analysis of C225 Binding to DU 145, PC-3 and LNCaP

The relative expression levels of EGF receptor on DU 145, PC-3 and LNCaP cells was determined by FACS analysis. Cells were grown to near confluency in complete medium, removed from the flasks with non-enzymatic dissociation buffer (Sigma), and resuspended at $5-10 \times 10^5$ per tube in 100 μ l of cold H-BSA (Hanks balanced salt solution containing 1% BSA). Ten micrograms C225 or an irrelevant myeloma-derived human IgG1 (Tago, Burlingame CA) were added to the tubes and incubated on ice for 60 minutes. After washing with cold H-BSA, goat anti-human IgG conjugated to FITC (Tago, Burlingame CA) was added for an additional 30 minutes on ice. Cells were washed 2 times with cold H-BSA, resuspended in 1 ml of H-BSA, and analyzed using a Coulter Epics Elite cell sorter (Coulter, Hialeah FL). Baseline fluorescence was determined using the FITC-labelled secondary antibody alone and non-specific fluorescence was defined by the irrelevant isotype control. Data is presented as the Mean Fluorescence Intensity (MFI), which is an indirect measure of antigen density. MFI is defined as the mean channel fluorescence multiplied by the percentage of positive cells for each sample.

Example III-2B. Phosphorylation Assays on PC-3, DU 145, and LNCaP Cells

Phosphorylation assays were performed on PC-3, DU 145, and LNCaP cells to determine if the EGF receptors expressed by these cells were functional and inhibited by C225. Assays and Western blot analysis were performed as previously described by Gill *et al.*, Nature 293, 305-307 (1981). Briefly, DU 145, PC-3, and LNCaP cells were grown to 90% confluency in complete medium and then starved in DMEM-0.5% calf serum 24 hours prior to experimentation. Cells were stimulated with EGF in the presence or absence of C225 for 15 minutes at room temperature. Monolayers were then washed with the ice cold PBS containing 1 mM sodium orthovanadate. Cells

were lysed and subjected to SDS PAGE followed by Western blot analysis. The phosphorylation patterns were determined by probing the blot with a monoclonal antibody to phosphotyrosine (UBI, Lake Placid NY) followed by detection using the ECL method (Amersham).

5 Example III-2C Animal Studies

Athymic nude mice (nu/nu; 6-8 weeks old males; Charles River Labs, Wilmington MA) were inoculated subcutaneously in the right flank with 10^6 DU 145 in 0.2 ml of Hank's balanced salt solution mixed with 0.2 ml of matrigel. Mice were observed until tumors were visible (about 14-20 days post challenge) and had reached an
10 average volume of about 100 mm^3 . Animals were weighed and randomly divided into treatment groups (10 animals per group). Antibody therapy, which included twice weekly intraperitoneal injections of 0.5 mg of C225 over 5 weeks, was begun. Control animals received injections of PBS. Preliminary studies established that there was no significant difference between the growth of DU 145 xenografts in animals
15 treated with polyclonal, DU 145-absorbed human IgG compared to PBS. Tumors were measured two times per week and volumes calculated using the following formula: $\pi/6 \times \text{larger diameter} \times (\text{smaller diameter})^2$. Animals were followed for at least 3 weeks following the final antibody injection (8 weeks after the start of therapy), at which time control animals were euthanized. Tumor free animals and
20 mice with small tumors were followed for an additional 2-3 months. Statistical analysis of tumor growth in each study was determined with a two tailed Student's T-test using the computer program SigmaStat (Jandel, San Rafael CA). A p value of < 0.05 was considered significant.

Example III-3. Biological Activity of Peptides Containing CDR Regions of 225

This example demonstrates that peptides constructed using 225-CDR sequences had biological activity against cell lines that express EGF receptors. A series of six peptides were generated with the following sequences:

5 Heavy Chain

CDR-1 NYGVH

CDR-2 GVIWSSGNTDYNTPTSR

CDR-3 RALTYDYEFAYW (SEQ ID NO: 32)

Light Chain

10 CDR-1 RASQSIGTNIH (SEQ ID NO: 33)

CDR-2 YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 34)

CDR-3 QQNNWP (SEQ ID NO: 35)

These peptides were dissolved in PBS at a concentration of 1 mg/ml. A431 cells were plated at 1000 cells per well in 96 well plates. Peptides were added at various concentrations. The chimeric C225 antibody and an irrelevant, isotype- matched immunoglobulin were used as a positive and negative U 1s, respectively. Plates were incubated for 72 hours at 37°C and pulsed overnight with ³H-thymidine. Cells were harvested and counted in a liquid scintillation counter. Percent inhibition is defined as the decrease in 3-H thymidine incorporation of antibody or peptide treated cells compared to cells grown in the absence of antibody or peptide.

As can be seen in Figure 5, A431 cells are inhibited by C225 and by heavy chain CDR-1 and heavy chain CDR-2 of monoclonal antibody 225. In contrast, isotype-matched irrelevant antibody and U 1 peptide did not inhibit A431 cells. These results indicate that heavy chain CDR-1 and -2 are able to inhibit the growth of A431 cells by interfering with the binding of ligand to the EGFR.

Example III-4. Biological Activity of C225-Doxorubicin Conjugate (C225-DOX)

The biological activity of C225-DOX was evaluated in vitro using EGFR expressing cell lines A431, KB and MDA-468 as well as EGFR non-expressing cell lines Molt-4 and SK-MEL-28. EGF receptor expression was verified by FACS analysis using C225 and C225-DOX conjugate. Assays were conducted over a 72h incubation period using ³[H]-thymidine and WST-1 as a read out. In all assays with EGFRc expressing cell lines, i.e., A431, KB and MDA-468 cells, C225-DOX exhibited high inhibition of cell proliferation when compared to no treatment or hIgG1 U1s. Comparisons of equimolar concentrations of C225-DOX with doxorubicin alone or mixtures of C225 and doxorubicin showed a 4-5 fold higher inhibition using the C225-DOX conjugate. Inhibition of cell proliferation by C225-DOX was also seen in EGFRc nonexpressing cell lines at higher doses. The C225-DOX inhibition in EGFRc-negative cell lines was 5-15 fold lower than EGFRc-positive cell lines and was similar to inhibition seen with equimolar concentrations of doxorubicin alone. Representative results are shown in Figure 6 for activity of C225-DOX on 431 cells.

Example IV. Humanization of M225.Example IV-1. Abbreviations

Dulbecco's Modified Eagles Medium (DMEM); Foetal Calf Serum (FCS); ribonucleic acid (RNA); messenger RNA (mRNA); deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA); double-stranded DNA (ds-DNA); polymerase chain reaction (PCR); enzyme linked immunoabsorbant assay (ELISA); hour (hr); minute (min); second (sec); human cytomegalovirus (HCMV); polyadenylation (poly(A)⁺); immunoglobulin (IgG); monoclonal antibody (mAb); complementarity determining region (CDR); framework region (FR); Tris-borate buffer (TBE); bovine serum albumin (BSA); phosphate buffered saline (PBS); room temperature (RT); nanometre (nm); epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR);

Example IV-2. Materials

Media components and all other tissue culture materials are obtained from Life Technologies (UK), except for FCS which is purchased from JRH Biosciences (USA). The RNA isolation kit is obtained from Stratgene (USA) while the 1st strand cDNA synthesis kit is purchased from Pharmacia (UK). All the constituents and equipment for the PCR-reactions, including AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase, are purchased from Perkin Elmer (USA). The TA Cloning® kit is obtained from Invitrogen (USA) and the Sequenase® DNA sequencing kit is purchased from Amersham International (UK). Agarose (UltraPure™) is obtained from Life Technologies (UK). The Wizard™ PCR Preps DNA Purification Kit, the Magic™ DNA Clean-up System and XL1Blue competent cells are purchased from Promega Corporation (USA). All other molecular biological products are purchased from New England Biolabs (USA). Nunc-Immuno Plate MaxiSorp™ immunoplates are obtained from Life Technologies (UK). Both the goat anti-human IgG, Fcγ fragment specific, antibody and the goat anti-human IgG (H+L) / horseradish peroxidase conjugate are purchased from Jackson ImmunoResearch Laboratories Inc. (USA). TMB substrate A and substrate B are obtained from Kirkegaard-Pery (USA). All other products for both ELISAs are obtained from Sigma (UK). Microplate Manager® data analysis software package is purchased from Bio-Rad (UK). The molecular modelling package QUANTA is obtained from the Polygen Corporation (USA) and the IRIS 4D workstation is purchased from Silicon Graphics (USA).

Example IV-3. PCR cloning and sequencing of the mouse variable region genes

The mouse M225 hybridoma cell line is grown, in suspension, using DMEM supplemented with 10% (v/v) FCS, 50 Units/ml penicillin / 50µg/ml streptomycin and 580 µg/ml L-glutamine. Approximately 10⁸ viable cells are harvested, while the supernatant from the hybridoma cells is assayed by ELISA to confirm that they are producing a mouse antibody. From the 10⁸ cells total RNA is isolated using a RNA

Isolation kit according to the manufacturers instructions. The kit uses a guanidinium thiocyanate phenol-chloroform single step extraction procedure as described by Chomczynski and Sacchi (6). Also following the manufacturers instructions, a 1st Strand cDNA Synthesis kit is employed to produce a single-stranded DNA copy of the M225 hybridoma mRNA using the NotI-(dT)₁₈ primer supplied in the kit.

5 Approximately 5 µg of total RNA is used in a 33 µl final reaction volume. The completed reaction mix is then heated to 90 °C for 5 min, to denature the RNA-cDNA duplex and inactivate the reverse transcriptase, before being chilled on ice.

To PCR-amplify the mouse variable region genes the method described by Jones and Bendig (7) is followed. Essentially, two series of degenerate primers, one series designed to anneal to the leader sequences of mouse kappa light chain genes (i.e. MKV1-11; Table 4) and one series designed to anneal to the leader sequences of mouse heavy chain genes (i.e. MHV1-12; Table 5), are used in conjunction with primers designed to anneal to the 5'-end of the mouse kappa light chain constant region gene (MKC; Table 4) and the 5'-end of the mouse γ1 heavy chain constant region gene (MHCG1; Table 5), respectively, to PCR-clone the mouse variable region genes of the M225 antibody. Separate reactions are prepared for each of the MKV and MHV degenerate primers, with their respective constant region primer. The PCR-reaction tubes are loaded into a Perkin Elmer 480 DNA thermal cycler and cycled

10 (after an initial melt at 94 °C for 1.5 min) at 94 °C for 1 min, 50 °C for 1 min and 72 °C for 1 min over 25 cycles. At the completion of the last cycle a final extension step at 72 °C for 10 min is carried out before the reactions are cooled to 4 °C. Except for between the annealing (50 °C) and extension (72 °C) steps, when an extended ramp time of 2.5 min is used, a 30 sec ramp time between each step of the cycle is

15 employed.

20 µl aliquots from each PCR-reaction are run on agarose gels to determine which have produced a PCR-product of the correct size. Those PCR-reactions that do appear to amplify full-length variable domain genes are repeated to produce independent

PCR-clones and thereby minimise the effect of PCR-errors. 6 μ l aliquots of those PCR-products of the correct size are directly cloned into the pCRTMII vector, provided by the TA Cloning® kit, and transformed into INV α F' competent cells as described in the manufacturers instructions. Colonies containing the plasmid, with a
5 correctly sized insert, are identified by PCR-screening the colonies using the pCRTMII Forward and pCRTMII Reverse oligonucleotide primers described in Table 6 according to the method of Güssow and Clackson (8). The putative positive clones identified are finally double-stranded plasmid DNA sequenced using the Sequenase®DNA Sequencing kit according to the method of Redston and Kern (9).

10 Example IV-4. Construction of chimeric genes

The cloned mouse leader-variable region genes are both modified at the 5'- and 3'-ends using PCR-primers to create restriction enzyme sites for convenient insertion into the expression vectors, a Kozak sequence for efficient eukaryotic translation of the mRNA encoding the respective immunoglobulin chains (10) and a splice-donor site
15 for the correct RNA splicing of the variable and constant region genes. A *Hind*III site is added to the 5'-end of both mouse variable region genes, however, different restriction sites : attached to the 3'-end of the mouse variable region genes i.e. a *Bam*HI site at the 3'-end of the V_H gene and a *Xba*I site at the 3'-end of the V_K gene.

PCR-reactions are prepared according to the method for the construction of
20 chimeric genes in Kettleborough *et al.* (11), using the primers C225V_H5' and C225V_H3' for the heavy chain, and C225V_K5' and C225V_K3' for the kappa light chain (Table 7). Following an initial melting step at 94 °C for 90 sec the mixes are PCR-amplified at 94 °C for 2 min and 72 °C for 4 min over 25 cycles. This two step PCR-cycle, as opposed to the more usual three step cycle, is possible because each of the
25 primers is designed to anneal to the template DNA over 24 bases which allows them to anneal at the relatively high temperature of 72 °C. A 30 sec ramp time is used between each step and at the end of the last cycle, the PCR-reactions are completed with a final

extension step at 72 °C for 10 min before cooling to 4 °C. The PCR-products are column purified using a Wizard™PCR Preps DNA Purification kit according to the manufacturers instructions, digested with the appropriate restriction enzymes, as is plasmid pUC19, and separated on a 1% agarose / TBE buffer (pH8.8) gel. The heavy and kappa light chain variable region genes are excised from the agarose gel and purified using a Wizard' PCR Preps DNA Purification kit. The pUC19 is also excised from the agarose gel and purified using the Magic™DNA Clean-up System as per the manufacturers instructions. The heavy and kappa light chain variable region genes are then separately ligated into the purified pUC19 to produce plasmids pUC-C225V_H and pUC-C225V_K, respectively, and transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive colonies containing the appropriate plasmid are then identified by PCR-screening, using oligonucleotide primers RSP and UP (Table 6) and finally ds-DNA sequenced both to confirm the introduction of the sequence modifications and also to prove that no unwanted changes to the DNA sequence have occurred as a consequence of the PCR-reactions.

To modify the signal peptide sequence at the 5'-end of the kappa light chain variable region PCR-mutagenesis is used, according to the protocol described by Kettleborough *et al.* (11). PCR-primers C225V_K5'sp and C225V_K3'sp (Table 7) are used on pUC-C225V_K template DNA to create the modified gene (C225V_Ksp) using the modified two step PCR amplification protocol. The PCR-product is then column purified before digesting both the purified PCR-product and pUC-C225V_K with *HindIII* and *PstI*. The PCR-fragment and the plasmid DNA are then agarose gel-purified, ligated together and cloned to create plasmid pUC-C225V_Ksp. As before, putative positive transformants are identified via a PCR-screen (using the RSP and UP primers) and then ds-DNA sequenced to confirm both the presence of the modified signal peptide and the absence of PCR-errors.

The adapted mouse kappa light and heavy chain leader-variable region genes are then directly inserted, as a *HindIII*-*BamHI* fragment in the case of the mouse V_H and

as a *HindIII-XbaI* fragment in the case of the mouse V_K , into vectors designed to express chimeric light and heavy chains in mammalian cells. These vectors contain the HCMV enhancer and promoter to drive the transcription of the immunoglobulin chain, a MCS for the insertion of the immunoglobulin variable region gene, a cDNA clone of the appropriate human kappa light or heavy chain constant region, a synthetic poly(A)⁺ sequence to polyadenylate the immunoglobulin chain mRNA, an artificial sequence designed to terminate the transcription of the immunoglobulin chain, a gene such as *dhfr* or *neo* for selection of transformed stable cell lines, and an SV40 origin of replication for transient DNA replication in COS cells. The human kappa light chain mammalian expression vector is called pKN100 (Figure 11) and the human $\gamma 1$ heavy chain mammalian expression vector is called pG1D105 (Figure 12). Putative positive colonies are both PCR-screened, using primers HCMVi and New.Huk for the chimeric kappa light chain vector and primers HCMVi and HuCy1 for the chimeric heavy chain vector (Table 6), and undergo restriction analysis to confirm the presence of the correct insert in the expression vector constructs. The new constructs containing the mouse variable region genes of the M225 antibody are called pKN100-C225V_K (or pKN100-C225V_{Ksp}) and pG1D105-C225V_H, respectively.

Example IV-5. Molecular modelling of mouse M225 antibody variable regions

To assist in the design of the CDR-grafted variable regions of the H225 antibody, a molecular model of the variable regions of the mouse M225 antibody is built. Modelling the structures of well-characterized protein families like immunoglobulins is achieved using the established method of modelling by homology. This is done using an IRIS 4D workstation running under the UNIX operating system, the molecular modelling package QUANTA and the Brookhaven crystallographic database of solved protein structures (12).

The FRs of the M225 variable regions are modelled on FRs from similar, structurally-solved immunoglobulin variable regions. While identical amino acid side chains are kept in their original orientation, mismatched side chains are substituted using the maximum overlap procedure to maintain *chi* angles as in the original mouse M225 antibody. Most of the CDRs of the M225 variable regions are modelled based on the canonical structures for hypervariable loops which correspond to CDRs at the structural level (13-16). However, in cases such as CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region, where there are no known canonical structures, the CDR loop is modelled based on a similar loop structure present in any structurally-solved protein. Finally, in order to relieve unfavourable atomic contacts and to optimize Van der Waals and electrostatic interactions, the model is subjected to energy minimization using the CHARMM potential (17) as implemented in QUANTA.

The FRs from the light chain variable region of M225 antibody are modelled on the FRs from the Fab fragment of mouse monoclonal antibody HyHel-10 (18). The FRs from the heavy chain variable region are modelled on the FRs from the Fab fragment of mouse monoclonal antibody D1.3 (19). Those amino acid side chains which differ between the mouse M225 antibody and the variable regions upon which the model is based are first substituted. The light chain of Fab HyHel-10 antibody is then superimposed onto the light chain of D1.3 by matching residues 35-39, 43-47, 84-88 and 98-102, as defined by Kabat *et al.*, (20). The purpose of this is to place the two heterologous variable regions, i.e. the HyHel-10-based kappa light chain variable region and the D1.3-based heavy variable region, in the correct orientation with respect to each other.

CDR1 (L1) of the light chain variable region of mAb M225 fits into the L1 canonical group 2, as proposed by Chothia *et al.* (14), except for the presence of an isoleucine, instead of the more usual leucine, at canonical residue position 33. However, this substitution is considered too conservative to merit significant concern in assigning a canonical loop structure to this hypervariable loop. The L1 loop of mouse Fab HyHel-10 is identical in amino acid length and matches the same canonical group - with a leucine

at position 33 - as the L1 loop of M225 mAb. Consequently this hypervariable loop is used to model the L1 loop of M225 kappa light chain variable region. Similarly, CDR2 (L2) and CDR3 (L3) of the M225 mAb both match their respective canonical group 1 loop structures. In addition, the corresponding hypervariable loop structures of the
5 HyHel-10 Fab fragment are also both group 1. Accordingly, the L2 and L3 loops of the M225 kappa light chain variable region are modelled on L2 and L3 of Fab HyHel-10.

Likewise, CDR1 (H1) and CDR 2 (H2) hypervariable loops of the heavy chain variable region of mAb M225 both fit their respective canonical group 1 loop structures as defined by Chothia *et al.* (14). Moreover, the corresponding H1 and H2 hypervariable
10 loops of mouse D1.3 Fab fragment also match their respective canonical group 1 loop structures. Consequently, as with the light chain, these hypervariable loops are modelled on the H1 and H2 loops of the heavy variable region upon which the model is based. To identify a matching loop structure to the CDR3 (H3) hypervariable loop of the heavy chain variable region of M225 the Brookhaven database is searched for a loop of identical
15 length and similar amino acid sequence. This analysis found that the H3 loop of the mouse Fab 26/9 (21) exhibited the closest match to the H3 loop of M225 mAb and is consequently used as the basis for this hypervariable loop in the mouse M225 variable region model. After adjusting the whole of the model for obvious steric clashes it is finally subjected to energy minimization, as implemented in QUANTA, both to relieve
20 unfavourable atomic contacts and to optimize van der Waals and electrostatic interactions.

Example IV-6. Design of the reshaped human H225 antibody variants.

The first step in designing the CDR-grafted variable regions of the H225 antibody is the selection of the human light and heavy chain variable regions that will serve as the
25 basis of the humanized variable regions. As an aid to this process the M225 antibody light and heavy chain variable regions are initially compared to the consensus sequences of the four subgroups of human kappa light chain variable regions and the three

subgroups of human heavy chain variable regions as defined by Kabat *et al.* (20). The mouse M225 light chain variable region is most similar to the consensus sequences of both human kappa light chain subgroup I, with a 61.68% identity overall and a 65.00% identity with the FRs only, and subgroup III, with a 61.68% identity overall and a 68.75% identity with the FRs only. The mouse M225 heavy chain variable region is most similar to the consensus sequence for human heavy chain subgroup II with a 52.10% identity overall and a 57.47% identity between the FRs alone. This analysis is used to indicate which subgroups of human variable regions are likely to serve as good sources for human variable regions to serve as templates for CDR-grafting, however, this is not always the case due to the diversity of individual sequences seen within some of these artificially constructed subgroups.

For this reason the mouse M225 variable regions are also compared to all the recorded examples of individual sequences of human variable regions publically available. With respect to human antibody sequences, the mouse M225 light chain variable region is most similar to the sequence for the human kappa light chain variable region from human antibody LS7'CL (22) - which is not related to the mouse L7'CL sequence. The kappa light chain variable region of human LS7'CL is a member of subgroup III of human kappa light chain variable regions. The overall sequence identity between the mouse M225 and human LS7'CL light chain variable regions is calculated to be 64.42% overall and 71.25% with respect to the FRs alone. The mouse M225 heavy chain variable region is most similar to the sequence for the human heavy chain variable region from human antibody 38P1'CL (23). Surprisingly, the heavy chain variable region of human 38P1'CL is a member of subgroup III and not subgroup II of the human heavy chain variable regions. The overall sequence identity between the mouse M225 and human 38P1'CL heavy chain variable regions is calculated to be 48.74% while the identity between the FRs alone is 58.62%. Based on these comparisons, human LS7'CL light chain variable region is selected as the human FR donor template for the design of reshaped human M225 light chain variable region and human 38P1'CL heavy chain

variable region is selected as the human FR donor template for the design of reshaped human M225 heavy chain variable region.

As is commonly seen, the human light and heavy chain variable regions that are selected for the humanization of the M225 antibody are derived from two different human antibodies. Such a selection process allows the use of human variable regions which display the highest possible degree of similarity to the M225 variable regions. In addition, there are many successful examples of CDR-grafted antibodies based on variable regions derived from two different human antibodies. One of the best studied examples is reshaped human CAMPATH-1 antibody (24). Nevertheless, such a strategy also requires a careful analysis of the interdomain packing residues between the kappa light chain and heavy chain variable regions. Any mis-packing in this region can have a dramatic affect upon antigen binding, irrespective of the conformation of the CDR loop structures of the reshaped human antibody. Consequently, the amino acids located at the V_K/V_H interface, as defined by Chothia *et al.* (25), are checked for unusual or rare residues. Any residues so identified are then considered for mutagenesis to an amino acid more commonly seen at the specific residue position under investigation.

The second step in the design process is to insert the M225 CDRs, as defined by Kabat *et al.* (20), into the selected human light and heavy chain variable region FRs to create a simple CDR-graft. It is usual that a mouse antibody that is humanized by a simple CDR-graft in this way, will show little or no binding to antigen. Consequently, it is important to study the amino acid sequences of the human FRs to determine if any of these amino acid residues are likely to adversely influence binding to antigen, either directly through interactions with antigen, or indirectly by altering the positioning of the CDR loops.

This is the third step of the design process where decisions are made as to which amino acids in the human donor FRs should be changed to their corresponding mouse M225 residues in order to achieve good binding to antigen. This is a difficult and critical

step in the humanization procedure and it is at this stage that the model of the M225 variable regions becomes most useful to the design process. In conjunction with the model the following points are now addressed.

It is of great importance that the canonical structures for the hypervariable loops (13-16) are conserved. It is therefore crucial to conserve in the humanized H225 variable regions any of the mouse FR residues that are part of these canonical structures. It is also helpful to compare the sequence of the M225 antibody to similar sequences from other mouse antibodies to determine if any of the amino acids are unusual or rare as this may indicate that the mouse residue has an important role in antigen binding. By studying the model of the M225 variable regions, it is then possible to make a prediction as to whether any of these amino acids, or any other residues at particular positions, could or could not influence antigen binding. Comparing the individual human donor sequences for the kappa light and heavy chain variable regions to the consensus sequence of human variable regions subgroups to which the donor sequences belong, and identifying amino acids that are particularly unusual is also important. By following this design process a number of amino acids in the human FRs are identified that should be changed from the amino acid present at that position in the human variable region to the amino acid present at that position in the Mouse M225 variable region.

Table 8 describes how the first version (225RK_h) of the reshaped human H225 kappa light chain variable regions is designed. There is only one residue in the reshaped human FRs where it is considered necessary to change the amino acid present in the human FRs to the amino acid present in the original mouse FRs. This change is at position 49 in FR2, as defined by Kabat *et al.* (20). The tyrosine found in human LS7'CL kappa light chain variable region is changed to a lysine, as found in mouse M225 kappa light chain variable region. From the model it appears that the lysine in M225 is located close to CDR3 (H3) of the heavy chain variable region and may be interacting with it. The residue is also positioned adjacent to CDR2 (L2) of the kappa light chain variable region and is rarely seen at this location amongst the members of mouse kappa light chain subgroup V, as

defined by Kabat *et al.* (20), to which the M225 kappa light chain variable region belongs. For these reasons it is felt prudent to conserve the mouse lysine residue in 225RK_A.

5 A second version is also made of the reshaped human kappa light chain (225RK_B) which reverses the FR2 modification made in 225RK_A, by replacing the lysine at position 49 with the original human tyrosine amino acid. Consequently, this version of the reshaped human kappa light chain will contain no mouse residues in the FRs whatsoever.

With respect to the design of reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region, Table 9 shows the first version (225RH_A). In all there are eight residues in the reshaped
10 human FRs where it is considered necessary to change the amino acid present in the human 38P1'CL FRs to the amino acids present in the original mouse M225 FRs (i.e. A24V, T28S, F29L, S30T, V48L, S49G, F67L and R71K). At positions 24, 28, 29 and 30 in FR1 the amino acid residues as present in the mouse sequence are retained in the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region because they represent some of the
15 canonical residues important for the H1 hypervariable loop structure (14). Since canonical residues are so critical for the correct orientation and structure of hypervariable loops that they are generally always conserved in the reshaped variable region. Moreover, residue positions 24-30 are considered part of the H1 hypervariable loop itself and so are even more critical to the correct conformation and orientation of this loop and justifying
20 their conservation even more strongly. Similarly, residue position 71 in FR3 is another position in the heavy chain variable region which has been identified by Chothia *et al.* (14) as one of the locations important for the correct orientation and structure of the H2 hypervariable loop and, as such, is one of the canonical amino acids of CDR2. Consequently, the lysine in the mouse will replace the arginine in the human at this
25 residue position. At positions 48 and 49 in FR2 and 67 in FR3, the valine, serine and phenylalanine residues (respectively) present in the human 38P1'CL V_H sequence are changed to leucine, glycine and leucine (respectively) as present in the mouse M225 V_H sequence. This decision is made on the basis of the model which shows that all three

residues are buried underneath the H2 loop and so could influence the conformation of the hypervariable loop and hence interfere with antigen binding. These are then the mouse residues conserved in the first version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region.

5 Version B of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_B) incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, contains a further mouse residue. At position 41 in FR2 the human threonine residue is replaced by proline which is invariably seen at this position in the mouse subgroup IB and is also very commonly seen in human subgroup III. In contrast, threonine is not usually seen at this
10 location in the human subgroup III (only ¹¹/₈₇ times) and from the model it appears that the residue is located on a turn located on the surface of the M225 V_H region. What effect this may have on hypervariable loop structures is unclear, however, this version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region should clarify this.

 Version C of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_C)
15 incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, contains a further two mouse residues located at position 68 and 70 in FR3. From the model of the mouse M225 variable region, both the serine at position 68 and the asparagine at position 70 appear to be on the surface and at the edge of the antigen binding site. Since there is a possibility that either or both amino acids could directly interact with EGFR, both the threonine at
20 position 68 and the serine at position 70 in the human FRs are replaced with the corresponding mouse residues in 225RH_C.

 Version D of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_D) simply incorporates all the mouse FR substitutions made in 225RH_A, 225RH_B and 225RH_C to determine the combined effect of these changes.

25 Version E of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_E) incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, incorporates another

residue change at position 78 in FR3. From the model there is some evidence to suggest that the mouse amino acid (valine) at position 78 could influence the conformation of the H1 hypervariable loops from its location buried underneath CDR1. Consequently, the human residue (leucine) is replaced by the mouse amino acid in 225RH_E.

5 Example IV-7. Construction of the humanized antibody variable region genes

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 V_K region (225RK_A) is carried out essentially as described by Sato *et al.* (26). In essence, this involves annealing PCR-primers encoding FR modifications (Table 10) onto a DNA template of the chimeric C225V_K gene using the two step PCR-amplification protocol to
10 synthesize the reshaped human variable region gene. As a consequence, the FR DNA sequence of the chimeric C225V_K is modified by the primers to that of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_A. The newly synthesized reshaped variable region gene, following column purification, is digested with *Hind*III and *Xba*I, agarose gel-purified and subcloned into pUC19 (digested and agarose gel-purified in an
15 identical manner). The new plasmid construct, pUC-225RK_A, is then transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive clones are identified by PCR-screening (using primers RSP and UP) and then finally ds-DNA sequenced, both to confirm their integrity and discount the presence of PCR-errors. From the confirmed positive clones an individual clone is selected and directly inserted, as a *Hind*III-*Xba*I fragment, into the
20 human kappa light chain mammalian expression vector (pKN100) to create the plasmid pKN100-225RK_A. The integrity of this vector construct is confirmed via PCR-screening (using primers HCMVi and New.Huk) and restriction digest analysis.

Version B of the reshaped human H225 V_K (225RK_B) is constructed using oligonucleotide primers 225RK_B-K49Y and APCR40 (Table 11). A 100 µl PCR-reaction
25 mix comprising 65.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 µl of 2 ng/µl plasmid pUC-225RK_A template DNA, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of primers

residues are buried underneath the H2 loop and so could influence the conformation of the hypervariable loop and hence interfere with antigen binding. These are then the mouse residues conserved in the first version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region.

5 Version B of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_B) incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, contains a further mouse residue. At position 41 in FR2 the human threonine residue is replaced by proline which is invariably seen at this position in the mouse subgroup IB and is also very commonly seen in human subgroup III. In contrast, threonine is not usually seen at this
10 location in the human subgroup III (only $11/_{87}$ times) and from the model it appears that the residue is located on a turn located on the surface of the M225 V_H region. What effect this may have on hypervariable loop structures is unclear, however, this version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region should clarify this.

 Version C of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_C)
15 incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, contains a further two mouse residues located at position 68 and 70 in FR3. From the model of the mouse M225 variable region, both the serine at position 68 and the asparagine at position 70 appear to be on the surface and at the edge of the antigen binding site. Since there is a possibility that either or both amino acids could directly interact with EGFR, both the threonine at
20 position 68 and the serine at position 70 in the human FRs are replaced with the corresponding mouse residues in 225RH_C.

 Version D of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_D) simply incorporates all the mouse FR substitutions made in 225RH_A, 225RH_B and 225RH_C to determine the combined effect of these changes.

25 Version E of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_E) incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, incorporates another

residue change at position 78 in FR3. From the model there is some evidence to suggest that the mouse amino acid (valine) at position 78 could influence the conformation of the H1 hypervariable loops from its location buried underneath CDR1. Consequently, the human residue (leucine) is replaced by the mouse amino acid in 225RH_E.

5 Example IV-7. Construction of the humanized antibody variable region genes

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 V_K region (225RK_A) is carried out essentially as described by Sato *et al.* (26). In essence, this involves annealing PCR-primers encoding FR modifications (Table 10) onto a DNA template of the chimeric C225V_K gene using the two step PCR-amplification protocol to
10 synthesize the reshaped human variable region gene. As a consequence, the FR DNA sequence of the chimeric C225V_K is modified by the primers to that of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_A. The newly synthesized reshaped variable region gene, following column purification, is digested with *Hind*III and *Xba*I, agarose gel-purified and subcloned into pUC19 (digested and agarose gel-purified in an
15 identical manner). The new plasmid construct, pUC-225RK_A, is then transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive clones are identified by PCR-screening (using primers RSP and UP) and then finally ds-DNA sequenced, both to confirm their integrity and discount the presence of PCR-errors. From the confirmed positive clones an individual clone is selected and directly inserted, as a *Hind*III-*Xba*I fragment, into the
20 human kappa light chain mammalian expression vector (pKN100) to create the plasmid pKN100-225RK_A. The integrity of this vector construct is confirmed via PCR-screening (using primers HCMVi and New.Huκ) and restriction digest analysis.

Version B of the reshaped human H225 V_K (225RK_B) is constructed using oligonucleotide primers 225RK_B.K49Y and APCR40 (Table 11). A 100 µl PCR-reaction
25 mix comprising 65.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 µl of 2 ng/µl plasmid pUC-225RK_A template DNA, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of primers

225RK_B.K49Y and APCR40 and 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase is overlaid with 50 µl of mineral oil and loaded into a DNA thermal cycler. The PCR-reaction is PCR-amplified, using the two step protocol over 25 cycles, and the PCR-product column purified before it is cut with *MscI*. Plasmid pUC-225RK_A is also cut with *MscI* and both
5 the digested PCR product and the plasmid fragment are agarose gel-purified. The PCR-product is then cloned into pUC-225RK_A, to create pUC-225RK_B, before being transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformant are first identified, using primers 225RK_B.K49Y and UP in a PCR-screening assay, and then confirmed via ds-DNA sequencing. A selected individual clone is finally subcloned into
10 pKN100 to produce the plasmid pKN100-225RK_B, whose correct construction is confirmed both by using primers HCMVi and New.Huk (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and restriction analysis.

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 V_H region (225RH_A) is also carried out essentially as described by Sato *et al.* (26). In the case of
15 the reshaped human 225RH_A gene this involves annealing PCR-primers (Table 12) onto both a DNA template of a previously humanized mAb, to create the 5'-half of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene, and the chimeric C225V_H gene, to synthesize the 3'-half of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene. Again, the two step PCR-amplification protocol is used and the reshaped variable region
20 gene created is cloned into pUC19 vector, as an agarose gel-purified *HindIII*-*BamHI* fragment, to create plasmid pUC-225RH_A. Putative positive clones identified by PCR-screening (using primers RSP and UP) are finally ds-DNA sequenced both to confirm the DNA sequence and prove the absence of PCR-errors. From the confirmed positive clones an individual clone is selected and directly inserted, as a *HindIII*-*BamHI* fragment, into
25 the human γ1 heavy chain mammalian expression vector pG1D105 to create plasmid pG1D105-225RH_A. The construction of this plasmid is then confirmed both by using primers HCMVi and γAS (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and restriction analysis.

Versions B of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_B) is synthesized in a two step PCR-mutagenesis procedure in the following manner. Two separate 100 µl PCR-reaction mixes are first prepared by combining 65.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 µl of 2 ng/µl plasmid pUC-225RH_A template DNA, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of primers APCR10 and 225RH_B.T41P-AS in the first PCR-reaction, and primers APCR40 and 225RH_B.T41P-S in the second PCR-reaction (Table 13), and finally 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. Each of the two PCR-reaction mixes are overlayed with 50 µl of mineral oil, loaded into a DNA thermal
5 10
cycler and PCR-amplified using the two step protocol over 25 cycles. The two PCR-products are then agarose gel-purified, to separate them from any template DNA remaining in the PCR-reaction, before being resuspended in 50µl of distilled/deionized water and their concentration determined.

In a second PCR-reaction 20pmol aliquots of each of the two PCR-products from the first PCR-reaction (equivalent to 8 µl of the APCR10/225RH_B.T41P-AS PCR product and 10 µl of the APCR40/225RH_B.T41P-S PCR-product) are added to 57.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs and 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. This PCR-reaction is overlayed with mineral oil and
15 20
PCR-amplified using the two step protocol over 7 cycles only. A third PCR-reaction is then prepared comprising 1 µl of the product of the second PCR-reaction 69.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of the nested primers RSP and UP and 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. The
25
PCR-reaction is overlayed with mineral oil and amplified using the two step protocol for a final 25 cycles. This PCR-product is then column purified, isolated as an agarose gel purified *HindIII*-*Bam*HI fragment, subcloned into *HindIII*-*Bam*HI digested and agarose gel -purified plasmid pUC19, and finally transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformants are first identified and then confirmed

as described previously. A selected individual clone is then subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the plasmid pG1D105-225RH_B - which is confirmed using primers HCMVi and γAS (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and by restriction analysis.

Version C of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_C) is synthesized in a similar manner to 225RK_C. A 100 μl PCR-reaction mix containing 65.5 μl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 μl of 2 ng/μl plasmid pUC-225RH_A template DNA, 10 μl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 μl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 μl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 μl aliquots (each of 10 M) of primers APCR40 and 225RH_C.T68S/S70N (Table 13) and 0.5 μl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. The PCR-reaction is overlaid with mineral oil PCR-amplified, using the two step protocol over 25 cycles, and column purified prior to digestion with *Sa*I and *Bam*HI. Plasmid pUC-225RH_A is also cut with with *Sa*I and *Bam*HI and both the digested PCR product and the plasmid are agarose gel-purified. The PCR-product is then cloned into pUC-225RH_A, to create pUC-225RH_C, before being transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformant are first identified, using primers RSP and UP in a PCR-screening assay, and later confirmed via ds-DNA sequencing. A selected individual clone is then subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the plasmid pG1D105-225RH_C. The correct construction of this vector finally proven both by using primers HCMVi and γAS (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and restriction analysis.

Version D of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_D) is a product of the changes incorporated into versions B and C of the reshaped human heavy chain of H225 antibody. Fortuitously, it is possible to amalgamate the changes made to these heavy chain variable region genes by digesting both pUC-225RH_B and pUC-225RH_C with *Sa*I and *Bam*HI. The 2.95 kb vector fragment from pUC-225RH_B and the approximately 180 bp insert fragment from pUC-225RH_C are then agarose gel-purified before being ligated together and transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Positive transformant are identified and ds-DNA sequenced before a selected

individual clone is subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the plasmid pG1D105-225RH_D. The correct construction of this vector is finally confirmed as described previously.

- 5 Version E of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_E) is a derivative of 225RH_A and is synthesized in an identical manner to 225RH_C using primers APCR40 and 225RH_E.L78V (Table 13). A selected 225RH_E clone from plasmid pUC-225RH_E is then subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the vector pG1D105-225RH_E - the correct construction of which is proven in the usual manner.

Example IV-8. Transfection of DNA into COS cells

- 10 The method of Kettleborough *et al.* (11) is followed to transfect the mammalian expression vectors into COS cells.

Example IV-9. Protein A purification of recombinant 225 antibodies

- 15 Both the chimeric C225 antibody and the various reshaped human H225 antibody constructs are protein A purified according to the protocol described in Kolbinger *et al.* (27).

Example IV-10. Mouse Antibody ELISA

- 20 Each well of a 96-well Nunc-Immuno Plate MaxiSorp™ immunoplate is first coated with 100 μl aliquots of 0.5 ng/μl goat anti-mouse IgG (γ-chain specific) antibody, diluted in coating buffer (0.05 M Carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6), and incubated overnight at 4 °C. The wells are blocked with 200 μl/well of mouse blocking buffer (2.5% (w/v) E . . . A in PBS) for 1 hr at 37 °C before being washed with 200 μl/well aliquots of wash buffer (PBS / 0.05% (v/v) tween-20) three times. 100 μl/well aliquots of the experimental samples (i.e. harvested media from the M225

hybridoma cell line - spun to remove cell debris) and 1:2 sample dilutions, diluted in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.0), 0.1 M NaCl, 0.02% (v/v) tween-20 and 0.2% (w/v) BSA), are now dispensed onto the immunoplate. In addition, a purified mouse IgG standard, serially diluted 1:2 from a starting concentration of 1000 ng/ml, is also loaded onto the immunoplate. The immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr and washed three times with 200 µl/well of wash buffer. 100 µl of goat anti-mouse IgG/horseradish peroxidase conjugate, diluted 1000-fold in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer, is now added to each well, following which the immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before it is washed as before. 100 µl aliquots of TMB peroxidase substrate A:peroxidase substrate B (1:1) are now added to each well and incubated for 10 min at RT in the dark. The reaction is halted by dispensing 50 µl of 1 N H₂SO₄ into each well. The optical density at 450 nm is finally determined using a Bio-Rad 3550 microplate reader in conjunction with Microplate Manager™.

15 Example IV-11. Quantification of whole human γ1/κ antibody via ELISA

Each well of a 96-well Nunc-Immuno Plate MaxiSorp™ immunoplate is first coated with 100 µl aliquots of 0.4 ng/µl goat anti-human IgG (Fcγ fragment specific) antibody, diluted in coating buffer (0.05 M Carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6), and incubated overnight at 4 °C. The wells are then each blocked with 200 µl of human blocking buffer (2% (w/v) BSA in PBS) for 2 hr at RT before being washed with 200 µl/well aliquots of wash buffer (PBS / 0.05% (v/v) tween-20) three times. 100 µl/well aliquots of the experimental samples (i.e. harvested COS cell supernatants - spun to remove cell debris) and 1:2 sample dilutions, diluted in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.0), 0.1 M NaCl, 0.02% (v/v) tween-20 and 0.2% (w/v) BSA), are now dispensed onto the immunoplate. In addition, a purified human γ1/κ antibody, which is used as a standard and serially diluted 1:2, is also loaded onto the immunoplate. The immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before being washed with 200 µl/well of wash buffer three times. 100 µl of goat anti-human

kappa light chain/horseradish peroxidase conjugate, diluted 5000-fold in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer, is added to each well, following which the immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before it is washed as before. The remainder of the protocol is identical to the mouse antibody ELISA.

5 Example IV-12. A431 Cell ELISA for the detection of EGFR antigen binding

The procedure is based upon the one provided by ImClone Systems Inc. to determine the relative binding affinity of the recombinant 225 antibody constructs, to EGFR expressed on the surface of A431 cells. The A431 cells are plated onto a 96-well flat bottomed tissue culture plate and incubated overnight in DMEM media with
10 10% (v/v) FBS at 37 °C and 5% CO₂. The following day the media is removed, the cells are washed once in PBS and then fixed with 100 µl/well of 0.25% (v/v) gluteraldehyde in PBS. This is removed and the plate is washed again in PBS before it is blocked with 200 µl/well of 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS for 2 hr at 37 °C. The blocking solution is removed and 100 µl/well aliquots of the experimental samples (i.e.
15 harvested COS cell supernatants - spun to remove cell debris) and 1:2 sample dilutions thereof (diluted in 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS) are dispensed onto the tissue culture plate. In addition, 80 µl/well aliquots of purified human γ1/κ antibody, which is used as a standard and serially diluted 1:5 from a starting concentration of 20 µg/ml, is also loaded onto the plate. The plate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr and then washed with
20 200 µl/well of 0.5% (v/v) tween-20 in PBS, three times. 100 µl of goat anti-human IgG (H+L)/horseradish peroxidase conjugate, diluted 5000-fold in 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS, is now added to each well, following which the plate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before being washed first with 200 µl/well of 0.5% (v/v) tween-20 in PBS (three times) and then distilled deionized water (twice). The remainder of the protocol is
25 identical to the mouse antibody ELISA.

Example IV-13. Cloning and sequencing of the variable regions of the M225 antibody

The presence of mouse antibody in the media from the M225 hybridoma cells at the point of harvesting the cells for RNA purification was proven using the mouse antibody ELISA. Following 1st strand synthesis the single stranded cDNA template was PCR-amplified with two series of degenerate primers, one series specific for the kappa light chain signal peptide/variable region genes (Table 4) and the second series specific for the heavy chain signal peptide/variable region genes (Table 5). Using these primers both the V_K gene and the V_H gene of the M225 antibody were successfully PCR-cloned from the M225 hybridoma cell line.

The M225 kappa light chain variable region gene was PCR-cloned, as an approximately 416bp fragment, using primers MKV4 (which annealed to the 5' end of the DNA sequence of the kappa light chain signal peptide) and MKC (designed to anneal to the 5' end of the mouse kappa constant region gene). Likewise the M225 heavy chain variable region gene was PCR-cloned, as an approximately 446bp fragment, using the MHV6 (which annealed to the 5' end of the DNA sequence of the heavy chain signal peptide) and MHCG1 (designed to anneal to the 5' end of the CH₁ domain of the mouse γ 1 heavy chain gene) primers.

To minimize the possibility of introducing errors into the wild-type sequences of the mouse M225 variable region genes, either caused by AmpliTaq® DNA polymerase itself or changes introduced by reverse transcriptase (which has an error frequency approximately $1/10$ that of AmpliTaq®), a strict protocol was followed. At least two separate PCR-products, each from a different total RNA preparation and subsequent 1st strand cDNA synthesis reaction, were PCR-cloned and then completely DNA sequenced on both DNA strands for both the kappa light chain and heavy chain variable region genes of M225 mAb.

From DNA sequence analysis of several individual clones from each of these PCR-reactions the mouse M225 antibody V_K and V_H genes were determined as shown in Figures 13 and 14, respectively. The amino acid sequences of the M225 V_K and V_H regions were compared with other mouse variable regions and also the consensus sequences of the subgroups that the variable regions were subdivided into in the Kabat database (20). From this analysis the M225 V_K region was found to most closely match the consensus sequence of mouse kappa subgroup V, with an identity of 62.62% and a similarity of 76.64% to the subgroup. However, the kappa light chain variable region also displayed a close match to mouse kappa subgroup III with a 61.68% identity and a 76.64% similarity to its consensus sequence. When only the FRs of the M225 kappa light chain variable region (i.e. without the amino acids in the CDRs) were compared to mouse subgroups III and V the identity increased to 66.25% for both subgroups while the similarity rose to 78.75% for subgroup III and to exactly 80.00% for subgroup V. Similar analysis of the M225 V_H region found that it exhibited the closest match to the consensus sequence of mouse heavy chain subgroup IB in the Kabat database (20). Identity between the mouse heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of M225 and the consensus sequence of subgroup IB was measured at 78.15% while the similarity was calculated to be 84.87%, with no other consensus sequence coming even remotely near these values. These results confirm that the mouse M225 variable regions appear to be typical of mouse variable regions.

Example IV-14. Construction and expression of chimeric C225 antibody

The PCR-products from the two PCR-reactions prepared to construct the C225 V_K and V_H genes were separately subcloned into pUC19 as *HindIII-BamHI* fragments and then PCR-screened to identify putative positive transformants. Those transformants so identified were then ds-DNA sequenced, to confirm their synthesis, and then subcloned into their respective mammalian expression vectors. The DNA and amino acid sequences of the chimeric C225 kappa light chain and heavy chain variable

regions are shown in Figures 15 and 16, respectively. Once the integrity of the expression vectors had also been confirmed, by PCR-screening and restriction analysis to confirm the presence of the correct insert, the vectors were co-transfected into COS cells. After 72 hr incubation, the medium was collected, spun to remove cell debris and analysed by ELISA for antibody production and binding to EGFR. Unfortunately, no chimeric antibody could be detected in the supernatant of the COS cell co-transfections.

An analysis of the leader sequence of C225V_K established that it was unusual, compared to the leader sequences of other kappa light chain variable regions in mouse kappa light chain subgroups III and V (20). To try and find a more suitable leader sequence, the Kabat database was analysed to identify an individual kappa light chain which both matched C225V_K amino acid sequence and whose signal peptide sequence was known. This search identified the kappa light chain of mouse antibody L7'CL (28) which exhibited a 94.79% identity and a 94.79% similarity to the C225V_K region and a perfect match with respect to FR1, which play an important role in the excision of the signal peptide during secretion. The amino acid sequence of the L7'CL kappa light chain signal peptide (i.e. MVSTPQFLVFLFWIPASRG (SEQ ID NO: 36)) displays all the characteristics thought important in a such a signal sequence - such as a hydrophobic core - and so it was decided to replace the signal peptide of the PCR-cloned 225V_K with this new sequence. Another point of interest was that the differences between the M225V_K and the L7'CL signal peptides nearly all occurred at its 5'-end where the MKV4 primer annealed (i.e. the first 33 bases which is equivalent to the first 11 amino acids of the signal peptide) when the M225V_K gene was originally PCR-cloned. Thus, these differences could well be primer induced errors in the DNA sequence of the signal peptide. PCR-mutagenesis of the C225V_K template produced an approximately 390bp product. The *HindIII-PstI* digested and purified fragment was then subcloned into identically digested and agarose gel-purified plasmid pUC-C225V_K and transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformants were identified and then ds-DNA sequenced. The C225V_Ksp

gene (Figure 17) was subcloned into pKN100 and the resulting expression vector (pKN100-C225V_{Ksp}) PCR-screened and restriction digested to confirm the presence of the correct insert. This vector was finally co-transfected into COS cells with pG1D105-C225V_H and after 72 hr incubation, the medium was collected, spun to remove cell debris and analysed by ELISA for antibody production and binding to EGFR. This time chimeric C225 antibody was detected in the supernatant of the COS cell co-transfections at an approximate concentration of 150 ng/ml and this antibody bound to EGFR in the cell ELISA. Figure 18 shows a typical example of one such experiment.

10 Example IV-15. Construction and expression of the reshaped H225 antibody (225RK_A/225RH_A)

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A) produced an approximately 416bp product that was then subcloned into pUC19 as a *Hind*II-*Bam*HI fragment. Putative positive transformants were identified using the PCR-screening assay and then ds-DNA sequenced. The 225RK_A gene (Figure 19) was subcloned into pKN100 and the resulting expression vector (pKN100-225RK_A) PCR-screened and restriction digested to confirm the presence of the correct insert. Likewise, the construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_A) produced an approximately 446bp product which was then subcloned into pUC19 as a *Hind*II-*Bam*HI fragment. Putative positive transformants were again identified in the PCR-screen and then ds-DNA sequenced. The 225RH_A gene (Figure 20) was subcloned into pG1D105 and the resulting expression vector (pG1D105-225RH_A) PCR-screened and restriction digested to confirm the presence of the correct insert.

25 These vectors were then co-transfected together into COS cells and after 72 hr incubation, the medium was collected, spun to remove cell debris and analysed by ELISA for antibody production and binding to EGFR. The concentration of reshaped

human antibody in the COS cell supernatants was slightly higher than those following transient expression of the C225 chimeric antibody (approximately 200 ng/ml). In addition, a significant level of binding to EGFR was shown in the cell ELISA. Figure 8 shows a typical example of one such experiment which appears to show that the

5 reshaped human H225 antibody (225RK_A/225RH_A) bound to EGFR expressed on the surface of A431 cells with about 65% of the relative affinity of the chimeric C225 antibody.

The amino acid sequences of the two versions of the kappa light chain reshaped human H225 variable regions constructed are shown in Figure 21, while the amino

10 acid sequences of the five versions of the heavy chain reshaped human H225 variable regions constructed are shown in Figure 22.

Example IV-16. References

1. Mendelsohn, J. (1988). In: Waldmann, H. (ed). *Monoclonal antibody therapy*. Prog. Allergy Karger, Basel, p147.
2. Aboud-Pirak, E., Hurwitz, E., Pirak, M.E., Bellot, F., Schlessinger, J., and Sela,
5 M. (1988). *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 80:1605.
3. Masui, H., Kawamoto, T., Sato, J.D., Wolf, B., Sato, G., and Mendelsohn, J. (1984). *Cancer Research* 44:1002.
4. Mueller, B.M., Romerdahl, C.A., Trent, J.M., and Reisfeld, R.A. (1991). *Cancer Research* 51:2193.
- 10 5. Rodeck, U., Herlyn, M., Herlyn, D., Molthoff, C., Atkinson, B., Varello, M., Steplewski, Z., and Koprowski, H. (1987). *Cancer Research* 47:3692.
6. Chomczynski, P., and Sacchi, N. (1987). *Anal. Biochem.* 162:156.
7. Jones, S.T., and Bendig, M.M. (1991). *Bio/Technology* 9:88.
8. Güssow, D., and Clackson, T. (1989). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 17:4000.
- 15 9. Redston, M.S., and Kern, S.E. (1994). *Biotechniques* 17:286.
10. Kozak, M. (1987). *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:947.
11. Kettleborough, C.A., Saldanha, J., Heath, V.J., Morrison, C.J., and Bendig, M.M. (1991). *Protein Eng.* 4:773.
12. Bernstein, F.C., Koetzle, T.F., Williams, G.J., Meyer, E.F., Brice, M.D.,
20 Todgers, J.R., Kennard, O., Shimanouchi, T. and Tasumi, M. (1977). *J. Mol. Biol.* 112:535.
13. Chothia, C., and Lesk, A.M. (1987). *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:901.
14. Chothia, C., Lesk, A.M., Tramontano, A., Levitt, M., Smith-Gill, S.J., Air, G., Sheriff, S., Padlan, E.A., Davies, A., Tulip, W.R., Colman, P.M., Spinelli, S.,
25 Alzari, P.M., and Poljak, R.J. (1989). *Nature* 34:877.
15. Tramontano, A., Chothia, C., and Lesk, A.M. (1990). *J. Mol. Biol.* 215:175.
16. Chothia, C., Lesk, A.M., Gherardi, E., Tomlinson, I.M., Walter, G., Marks, J.D., Llewelyn, M.B., and Winter, G. (1992). *J. Mol. Biol.* 227:799.

17. Brooks, B.R., Bruccoleri, R.E., Olafson, B.D., States, D.J., Swaminathan, S., and Karplus, M. (1983). *J. Comp. Chem.* **4**:187.
18. Padlan, E.A., Silverton, E.W., Sheriff, S., Cohen, G.H., Smith-Gill, S.J., and Davies, D.R. (1989). *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:5938.
- 5 19. Fischmann, T.O., Bentley, G.A., Bhat, T.N., Boulot, G., Mariuzza, R.A., Phillips, S.E.V., Tello, D. and Poljak, R.J. (1991) *J.Biol.Chem.* **266**:12915.
20. Kabat, E.A., Wu, T.T., Perry, H.M., Gottesman, K.S., and Foeller, C. (1991). *Sequences of proteins of immunological interest*, Fifth Edition, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, U.S. Government Printing Office.
- 10 21. Schulze-Gahmen, U., Rini, J.M., and Wilson, I.A. (1993). *J.Mol.Biol.* **234**:1098.
22. Silberstein, L.E., Litwin, S., and Carmack, C.E. (1989). *J. Exp. Med.* **169**: 1631.
23. Schroeder Jr., H.W., Hillson, J.L., and Perlmutter, R.M. (1987). *Science* **238**:791.
24. Riechmann, L., Clark, M., Waldmann, H., and Winter, G. (1988). *Nature* **322**:21.
25. Chothia, C., Novotny, J., Bruccoleri, R., and Karplus, M. (1985). *J. Mol. Biol.*
15 **186**:651.
26. Sato, K., Tsuchiya, M., Saldanha, J., Koishihara, Y., Ohsugi, Y., Kishimoto, T., and Bendig, M.M. (1993). *Cancer Research* **53**:851.
27. Kolbinger, F., Saldanha, J., Hardman, N., and Bendig, M.M. (1993). *Protein Eng.* **6**:971.
- 20 28. Pech, M., Hochtl, J., Schnell, H., and Zachau, H.G. (1981). *Nature* **291**:668.

Example IV-17. Tables

Table 4. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 kappa light chain variable region genes.

Table 5. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 heavy
5 chain variable region genes.

Table 6. Primers for PCR screening transformed colonies

Table 7. Primers for constructing chimeric C225 antibody kappa light chain and heavy chain variable region genes and also for modifying the signal peptide sequence of the C225 antibody kappa light chain.

10 Table 8. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A).

Table 9. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody heavy chain variable region (225RH_A).

Table 10. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain
15 variable region gene 225RK_A.

Table 11. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_B.

Table 12. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain
20 variable region gene 225RH_A.

Table 13. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region genes 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D and 225RH_E.

Table 4. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 kappa light chain variable region genes.

Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
MKV1 ^a (30mer)	ATGAAGTTGCCTGTTAGGCTGTTGGTGCTG
5 MKV2 (30mer)	ATGGAGACAGACACACTCCTGCTATGGGTG T T
MKV3 (30mer)	ATGAGTGTGCTCACTCAGGTCCTGGCGTTG G
MKV4 (33mer)	ATGAGGGCCCCCTGCTCAGTTTTTTGGCTTCTTG A A C AA
MKV5 (30mer)	ATGGATTTTTCAGGTGCAGATTATCAGCTTC A T
MKV6 (27mer)	ATGAGGTGCCCTGTTTCAGTTCCTGGGG T TT C G C T A
10 MKV7 (31mer)	ATGGGCATCAAGATGGAGTCACAGACCCAGG T TTT T
MKV8 (31mer)	ATGTGGGGACCTTTTTTCCCTTTTTCAATTG T G C AA
MKV9 (25mer)	ATGGTATCCACACCTCAGTTCCTTG G T G
MKV10 (27mer)	ATGTATATATGTTTGTTGTCTATTTCT
MKV11 (28mer)	ATGGAAGCCCCAGCTCAGCTTCTCTTCC
15 MKC ^b (20mer)	ACTGGATGGTGGGAAGATGG

^a MKV indicates primers that hybridize to leader sequences of mouse kappa light chain variable region genes.

^b MKC indicates the primer that hybridizes to the mouse kappa constant region gene.

Table 5. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 heavy chain variable region genes.

	Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
	MHV1 ^a (27mer)	ATGAAATGCAGCTGGGGCATCTTCTTC G
5	MHV2 (26mer)	ATGGGATGGAGCTGTATCATGTTCTT A CC
	MHV3 (27mer)	ATGAAGTTGTGGTTAAACTGGGTTTTT A
	MHV4 (25mer)	ATGAACTTTGGGCTCAGCTTGATTT G T G
	MHV5 (30mer)	ATGGACTCCAGGCTCAATTTAGTTTTCTT
	MHV6 (27mer)	ATGGCTGTCCTAGGGCTACTCTTCTGC T G C G
10	MHV7 (26mer)	ATGGGATGGAGCGGGATCTTTCTCTT A T G A
	MHV8 (23mer)	ATGAGAGTGCTGATTCTTTTGTG
	MHV9 (30mer)	ATGGATTGGGTGTGGACCTTGCTATTCCTG C A
	MHV10 (27mer)	ATGGGCAGACTTACATTCTCATTCCTG
	MHV11 (28mer)	ATGGATTTTGGGCTGATTTTTTTTATTG
15	MHV12 (27mer)	ATGATGGTGTTAAGTCTTCTGTACCTG
	MHCG1 ^b (21mer)	CAGTGGATAGACAGATGGGGG

^a MHV indicates primers that hybridize to leader sequences of mouse heavy chain variable region genes.

^b MHCG indicates primers that hybridize to mouse constant region genes.

Table 6. Primers for PCR screening transformed colonies

	Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
	pCR TM I Forward Primer (18mer)	C T A G A T G C A T G C T C G A G C
	pCR TM II Reverse Primer(21mer)	T A C C G A G C T C G G A T C C A C T A G
5	RSP (Reverse Sequencing Primer) (24mer)	A G C G G A T A A C A A T T T C A C A C A G G A
	UP (Universal Primer) (24mer)	C G C C A G G G T T T T C C C A G T C A C G A C
	γAS (20mer)	A C G A C A C C G T C A C C G G T T C G
	HCMVi (28mer)	G T C A C C G T C C T T G A C A C G C G T C T C G G G A
10	New.Huk (25mer)	G T T G T T T G C G C A T A A T C A C A G G G C A
	Huyl (17mer)	T T G G A G G A G G G T G C C A G
	225RK _B .K49Y (60mer)	C A G C A A A G A C C T G G C C A G G C T C C A A G G C T T C T C A T A T A T T A T G C T T C T G A G T C T A T C T C T

Table 7. Primers for constructing chimeric C225 antibody kappa light chain and heavy chain variable region genes and also for modifying the signal peptide sequence of the C225 antibody kappa light chain.

	Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
5	C225V _H 5' (36mer)	A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G C T G T C T T G G G G C T G C T C
	C225V _H 3' (34mer)	G G A T C C A C T C A C C T G C A G A G A C A G T G A C C A G A G T
	C225V _K 5' (36mer)	A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G T A T C C A C A C C T C A G A A C
	C225V _K 3' (40mer)	T C T A G A A G G A T C C A C T C A C G T T T C A G C T C C A G C T T G G T C C
	C225V _K 5'sp (99mer)	A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G T A T C C A C A C C T C A G T T C C T T G T A T T T T T G C T T T T C T G G A T T C C A G C C T C C A G A G G T G A C A T C T T G C T G A C T C A G T C T C C A
10	C225V _K 3'sp (21mer)	A G A G A T A G A C T C A G A A G C A T A

Table 8. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A).

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
1	1	FR1	D	D	E	E	E	Surface	
2	2		I	I	I*	I	I		Canonical AA for L1 loop
3	3		L [83]	Q	V*	V [1075]	V	Surface	[1676]L=6/270 (& Linked to 10I+39R+40T+41N) in mouse κ-V. L=1/116 in human -III.
4	4		L	M	L	L	L		L=18/276 in mouse κ-V.
5	5		T	T*	T*	T	T		
6	6		Q	Q*	Q	Q	Q		
7	7		S	S	S*	S	S		
8	8		P	P	P*	P	P		
9	9		V [5]	S	G	A [466]	Δ	Surface	[1621] Val not seen in mouse κ-V. V=1/107 in human -III.
10	10		I [185]	S	T*	T [177]	I	Surface	[1396] I=4/286 (& linked to 3L+39R+40T+41N) in mouse κ-V. Ie not seen in human -III.
11	11		L	L	L*	L	L		
12	12		S	S	S*	S	S		
13	13		V [677]	A	L	L [87]	L	Surface	[1616] V=47/276 in mouse κ-V. V=17/106 in human -III.
14	14		S	S	S*	S	S		
15	15		P	L	P*	P	P		P=26/286 in mouse κ-V.
16	16		G	G*	G*	G	G		
17	17		E	D	E	E	E		E=95/276 in mouse κ-V.
18	18		R	R	R	R	R		
19	19		V	V	A	A	Δ	Buried	V=10/98 in human -III.

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
20	20		S	T	T	T	I	Half- buried	S=77/299 in mouse κ-V. S=1/97 in human -III.
21	21		F [15]	I	L*	L [234]	L	Buried	[1595]F=5/301 in mouse κ- V. Phc not seen in human - III.
22	22		S	T	S*	S	S		S=116/296 in mouse κ-V.
23	23	FRI	C	C*	C*	C	C		
24	24	CDR1	R	R	R	R	R		
25	25		A	A*	A*	A	A		Canonical AA for L1 loop.
26	26		S	S*	S*	S	S		
27	27		Q	Q	Q	Q	Q		
27A			-	D	-	-	-		
27B			-	-	-	-	-		
27C			-	-	-	-	-		
27D			-	-	-	-	-		
27E			-	-	-	-	-		
27F			-	-	-	-	-		
28	28		S	D	S	S	S		
29	29		I	I	V	V	I		Canonical AA for L1 loop.
30	30		G	S	S	S	G		
31	31		T	N	S	S	T		
32	32		N	Y	Y	Y	N		
33	33		I	L	L	L	I		Canonical AA for L1 loop.
34	34	CDR1	H	N	A	A	H		Packing AA.
35	35	FR2	W	W*	W*	W	W		
36	36		Y	Y	Y*	Y	Y		Packing AA.
37	37		Q	Q*	Q	Q	Q		
38	38		Q	Q	Q	Q	Q		Packing AA.
39	39		R	K	K	R	R		R=10/252 (& linked to 3L+10I+40T+41N) in mouse κ-V.

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
40	40		T [10]	P	P*	P [1080]	P	Surface	[1301]T=5/255 (& linked to 3L+10I+39R+41N) in mouse κ-V. Thr not seen in human -III.
41	41		N [5]	G	G*	G [1009]	G	Surface	[1267]N=5/246 & linked to 3L+10I+39R+40T) in mouse κ-V. Asn not seen in human -III.
42	42		G	G	Q	Q	Q	Surface	G=1/67 in human -III.
43	43		S	S	A	A	Δ	Surface	S=2/66 in human -III.
44	44		P	P	P*	P	P		Core packing AA.
45	45		R	K	R*	R	R		R=34/250 in mouse κ-V. (Possible link to AA3, 10, 39-41).
46	46		L	L	L*	L	L		Packing AA.
47	47		L	L*	L*	L	L		
48	48		I	I	I*	I	I		Canonical AA for L2 Loop.
49	49	FR2	K [19]	Y	Y	Y [1042]	K	Buried	Close to H3 loop & may be interacting with it. (Δ1) [1234] K=13/249 (& linked to 581) in mouse κ-V. (Possible link to AA3, 10, 39-41.). Lys not seen in human -III.
50	50	CDR2	Y	Y	G	D	Y		
51	51		A	A	A	A	A		Canonical AA for L2 loop.
52	52		S	S	S*	S	S		Canonical AA for L2 loop.
53	53		E	R	S	N	E		
54	54		S	L	R*	R	S		
55	55		I	H	A*	A	I		
56	56	CDR2	S	S	T*	T	S		
57	57	FR3	G	G*	G*	G	G		
58	58		I	V	I*	I	I		I=34/232 (& linked to 49K) in mouse κ-V. (Possible link to AA 3, 10, 39-41.)
59	59		P	P*	P*	P	P		
60	60		S	S	D	A	Δ	Surface	Ser not seen in human -III.
61	61		R	R*	R*	R	R		

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
62	62		F	F*	F*	F	F		
63	63		S	S	S*	S	S		
64	64		S	G*	G*	G	S		Canonical AA for L2 loop.
65	65		S	S*	S*	S	S		
66	66		G	G	G	G	G		
67	67		S	S*	S*	S	S		
68	68		G	G*	G*	G	G		
69	69		T	T	T*	T	T		
70	70		D	D	D	D	D		
71	71		F	Y	F*	F	F		Canonical AA for I1 loop. F=83/243 (& linked to 72T) in mouse κ-V.
72	72		T	S	T*	T	T		T=73/246 (& linked to 71F) in mouse κ-V.
73	73		L	L	L*	L	L		
74	74		S [38]	T	T*	T [837]	I	Half-buried	[1220]S=29/247 in mouse κ-V. Ser not seen in human -III.
75	75		I	I*	I*	I	I		
76	76		N [68]	S	S*	S [880]	S	Surface	[1211]N=34/242 in mouse κ-V. N=2/64 in human -III.
77	77		S	N	R	S	S		S=113/236 in mouse κ-V.
78	78		V	L	L*	L	L	Buried	V=67/245 in mouse κ-V. V=1/65 in human -III.
79	79		E	E	E	E	E		
80	80		S [94]	Q	P	P [166]	P	Surface	[1181]S=56/243 in mouse κ-V. S=8/65 in human -III.
81	81		E	E	E	E	E		
82	82		D	D*	D*	D	D		
83	83		I [98]	I	F*	F [150]	E	Surface	[1176]Ile not seen in human -III.
84	84		A	A	A*	A	A		
85	85		D	T	V*	V	V	Half-buried	D=36/243 in mouse κ-V, Asp not seen in human -III.
86	86		Y	Y*	Y*	Y	Y		
87	87		Y	F	Y*	Y	Y		Packing AA. Y=109/237 in mouse κ-V.

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
88	88	FR3	C	C*	C*	C	C		
89	89	CDR3	Q	Q	Q*	Q	Q		Packing AA.
90	90		Q	Q	Q*	Q	Q		Canonical AA for L3 loop.
91	91		N	G	Y	R	N		Packing AA. (Unusual AA)
92	92		N	N	G	S	N		
93	93		N	T	S	N	N		
94	94		W	L	S	W	W		
95	95		P	P	P	P	P		Canonical AA for L3 loop.
95A			-	P	P	-	-		
95B			-	-	L	-	-		
95C			-	-	T	-	-		
95D			-	-	F	-	-		
95E			-	-	G	-	-		
95F			-	-	Q	-	-		
96	96		T	R	G	L	T		Core packing AA.
97	97	CDR3	T	T*	T	T	T		Canonical AA for L3 loop.
98	98	FR4	F	F*	F*	F	F		Core packing AA.
99	99		G	G*	G*	G	G		
100	100		A	G	Q	G	G	surface	A=26/215 in mouse κ-V. A1a not seen in human -III.
101	101		G	G*	G*	G	G		
102	102		T	T*	T*	T	T		
103	103		K	K*	K	K	K		
104	104		L	L*	V	V	V	buried	L=15/56 in human -III.
105	105		E	E*	E*	E	E		
106	106		L	I	I*	I	I	buried	L=23/176 in mouse κ-V. L=1/56 in human -III.
106A			-	-	-	-	-		
107	107	FR4	K	K*	K*	K	K		

Table 8 - Continued

Comparison of AA Variable Region AA Sequences to M225	Mouse C225	Mouse κ -V	Human κ -III	Human Donor LS7''CL	225 RH _A	Comment
PERCENT IDENTITY	100.0	62.62	61.68	65.42	79.44	Comment: There are 22 amino acid mismatches in the frameworks between
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	66.25	68.75	71.25	72.50	the variable regions of the reshaped kappa light chain H225RK _A and the mouse M225 kappa light chain.
PERCENT SIMILARITY	100.0	76.64	72.90	77.57	87.85	Candidate AA for further mutation include residues at positions 39-45
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	80.0	80.0	82.50	83.75	(which are unusual) and a back mutation at position 49 i.e. K49Y.

Legend: (*) invariant residues as defined either by the Kabat consensus sequences i.e. 95% or greater occurrence within Kabat subgroup (Kabat *et al.*, 1991) (in the case of columns 5 and 6) or as part of the canonical structure for the CDR loops (in the case of column 8) as defined by Chothia *et al.*, (1989); (**BOLD**) positions in Frs and CDRs where the human amino acid residue was replaced by the corresponding mouse residue (UNDERLINE) positions in Frs where the human residue differs from the analogous mouse residue number; (δ) numbering of changes in the human Frs; (mouse C225) amino acid sequence of the V_L region from chimeric C225 antibody; (mouse -V) consensus sequence of mouse kappa V_L regions from subgroup V (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (human -III) consensus sequence of human V_L regions from subgroup III (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (Human Donor LS7''CL) amino acid sequence from human LS7''CL antibody (Silberstein, L.E. *et al.*, 1989); (Surface or Buried) position of amino acid in relation to the rest of the residues in both chains of the antibody variable regions; (225RK_A) amino acid sequence of the first version of the reshaped human mAb H225 V_K region; (Core packing AA/Packing AA) amino acids located at the V_L/V_H interface as defined by Chothia *et al.* (1985); (Canonical AA) amino acids defined by Chothia and Lesk (1987), Chothia *et al.* (1989), Tramontano *et al.* (1990) and Chothia *et al.* (1992) as being important for CDR loop conformation.

Table 9. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A).

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human donor 38P1	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
1	1	FR1	Q	Q*	E	E	E	Surface	Q=13/172 in human III.
2	2		V	V*	V	V	V		
3	3		Q	Q	Q	Q	Q		
4	4		L	L*	L*	L	L		
5	5		K [99]	K*	V	V [499]	V	Surface	[1446] Lys not seen in human III.
6	6		Q	E	E	E	E	Buried	Q=15/84 (& linked to 13Q+40S+80F+84S+85N+89I) in mouse IB. Q=0/164 in human III.
7	7		S	S*	S*	S	S		
8	8		G	G*	G*	G	G		
9	9		P	P*	G*	G	G	Surface	Pro not seen in human III.
10	10		G	G	G	G	G		
11	11		L	L*	L	L	L		
12	12		V	V*	V	V	V		
13	13		Q	A	Q	Q	Q		
14	14		P	P*	P*	P	P		
15	15		S	S*	G*	G	G	Surface	Ser not seen in human III.
16	16		Q	Q*	G	G	G	Surface	Gin not seen in human III.
17	17		S	S*	S*	S	S		
18	18		L	L*	L*	L	L		
19	19		S	S*	R	R	R	Surface	Ser not seen in human III.
20	20		I	I*	L	L	L	Buried	I=1/143 in human III.
21	21		T	T*	S*	S	S	Surface	Thr not seen in human III.
22	22		C	C*	C*	C	C		
23	23		T	T*	A	A	A	Surface	T=1/128 in human III.
24	24		V	V*	A	A	V	Buried	Canonical AA for H1 loop. V=9/132 in human III. (δ)
25	25		S	S*	S*	S	S		
26	26		G	G*	G	G	G		Canonical AA for H1 loop.
27	27		F	F*	F*	F	F		Canonical AA for H1 loop.

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human donor 38P1	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
28	28		S	S*	T	T	S		Canonical AA for H1 loop. S=6/104 in human III. (δ2)
29	29		L	L*	F	F	L		Canonical AA for H1 loop. L=1/108 in human III. (δ3)
30	30	FR1	T	T	S	S	T		Canonical AA for H1 loop. T=1/103 in human III. (δ4)
31	31	CDR	N	S	S	S	N		
32	32		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
33	33		G	G	A	D	G		
34	34		V	V	M	M	V		Canonical AA for H1 loop.
35	35		H	H	S	H	H		Packing AA.
35a			-	x	-	-			
35b		CDR1	-	S	-	-			
36	36	FR2	W	W*	W*	W	W		
37	37		V	V	V*	V	V		Packing AA.
38	38		R	R*	R*	R	R		
39	39		Q	Q*	Q*	Q	Q		Packing AA.
40	40		S	P	A	A	A	Half-buried	S=12/97 (& linked to 6Q+13Q+80F+84S+85N+89I) in mouse IB. S=1/91 in human III.
41	41		P [1223]	P*	P	T [11]	I	Surface	[1382] P=75/87 in human III.
42	42		G	G*	G*	G	G		
43	43		K	K*	K*	K	K		
44	44		G	G*	G	G	G		
45	45		L	L*	L*	L	L		Core packing AA.
46	46		E	E*	E	E	E		
47	47		W	W*	W*	W	W		Packing AA.
48	48		L	L*	V	V	L	Buried	L=2/86 in human III. Underneath H2 loop (δ5)
49	49	FR2	G [985]	G	S	S [58]	G	Buried	[1390] G=21/86 in human III. Underneath H2. (δ6)
50	50	CDR2	V	V	V	A	V		
51	51		I	I*	I	I	I		
52	52		W	W*	S	G	W		

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
52a			-	-	G	-	-		
52b			-	-	K	-	-		
52c			-	-	T	-	-		
53	53		S	A	D	T	S		
54	54		G	G	G	A	G		
55	55		G	G*	G	G	G		Canonical AA for H2 loop.
56	56		N	S	S	D	N		
57	57		T	T*	T	T	T		
58	58		D	N	Y	Y	D		
59	59		Y	Y*	Y	Y	Y		
60	60		N	N*	A	P	N		
61	61		T	S	D	G	T		
62	62		P	A	S	S	P		
63	63		F	L	V*	V	F		
64	64		T	M	K	K	T		
65	65	CDR2	S	S*	G*	G	S		
66	66	FR3	R	R*	R*	R	R		
67	67		L	L*	F*	F	L	Buried	Leu not seen in human III. (87)
68	68		S	S	T	T	I	Surface	Edge of binding site. Ser not seen in human III.
69	69		I	I*	I*	I	I		
70	70		N [18]	S	S*	S [662]	S	Surface	[1478] Very edge of binding site. N=1/107 in mouse IB. N=1/86 in human III.
71	71		K	K*	R*	R	K	Buried	Canonical AA for H2 loop. Lys is not seen in human III. (88)
72	72		D [1344]	D*	D	E [31]	E	Half-buried	[1457] D=71/85 in human III.
73	73		N	N	N	N	N		
74	74		S	S*	S	A	Δ	Surface	S=75/84 in human III.
75	75		K	K	K	K	K		

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
76	76		S[800]	S	N	N	N	Half- buried	S=8/85 (& possibly linked to 49G) in human III. Conserve if binding poor?
77	77		Q [199]	Q*	T	S [51]	S	Surface	[1419] Qn not seen in human III.
78	78		V	V*	L	L	L	Buried	V=3/84 in human III.
79	79		F	F*	Y	Y	Y	Half- buried	Phe not seen in human III.
80	80		F [24]	L	L*	L [857]	L	Buried	[1490] F=22/112 (& linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+84S+85N+89I) in mouse IB. Phe not seen in human III.
81	81		K	K*	Q	Q	Q	Surface	K=22/52 in human III.
82	82		M	M	M*	M	M		
82a	83		N	N	N	N	N		
82b	84		S	S*	S	S	S		
82c	85		L	L	L	L*	L		
83	86		Q [118]	Q	R	R [415]	R	Surface	[1482] Q=4/93 in human III.
84	87		S	T	A	A	A	Surface	S=4/116 (& possibly linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+80F+85N+89I) in mouse IB. Ser not seen in human III.
85	88		N [12]	D	E [1244]	G [9]	G	Surface	[1503] N=11/116 (& linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+80F+84S+89I) in mouse IB. Asn not seen in human III.
86	89		D	D*	D	D	D		
87	90		T	T*	T	T	T		
88	91		A	A*	A*	A	A		
89	92		I	M	V	V	V	Half- buried	I=24/113 (& possibly linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+80F+84S+85N) in mouse IB. I=1/94 in human III.
90	93		Y	Y*	Y*	Y	Y		
91	94		Y	Y*	Y*	Y	Y		Packing AA.
92	95		C	C*	C*	C	C		
93	96		A	A*	A	A	A		Packing AA.
94	97		FR3	R	R	R	R		Canonical AA for H1 loop.
95	98	CDR3	A	D	G	S	A		Packing AA. (Unusual AA)

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
96	99		L	R	R	F	L		
97	100		T	G	X	S	T		
98	101		Y	V	G	E	Y		
99	102		Y	x	X	T	Y		
100	103		D	R	S	E	D		
100a	104		Y	Y	L	D	Y		
100b	105		E	D	S	A	E		
100c			-	P	G	-	-		
100d			-	D	x	-	-		
100e			-	K	Y	-	-		
100f			-	Y	Y	-	-		
100g			-	F	Y	-	-		
100h			-	T	Y	-	-		
100i			-	L	H	-	-		
100j			-	W	Y	-	-		
100k	106		F	F	F	F	F		Core packing AA.
101	107		A	D	D	D	A		
102	108	CDR3	Y	Y	Y	I	Y		
103	109	FR4	W	W*	W*	W	W		Core packing AA.
104	110		G	G*	G*	G	G		
105	111		Q	Q*	Q	Q	Q		
106	112		G	G*	G*	G	G		
107	113		T	T*	T*	T	T		
108	114		L [349]	L	L	M [28]	M		[1020] L-59/76 in human III.
109	115		V	V	V*	V	V		
110	116		T	T*	T*	T	T		
111	117		V	V*	V*	V	V		
112	118		S	S*	S*	S	S		
113	119	FR4	A	S	S*	S	S		A=28/76 in mouse IB. Ala not seen in human III.

Table 9 - Continued

Comparison of AA Variable Region AA Sequences to M225	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Comment
PERCENT IDENTITY	100.0	78.15	55.46	48.74	76.47	There are 26 amino acid mismatches in the FR between the
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	88.51	63.22	58.62	67.82	variable regions of the reshaped heavy chain H225RH _A and the mouse M225 heavy chain
PERCENT SIMILARITY	100.0	84.87	71.43	67.23	84.87	225RH _B = 225 RH _A + T41P 225RH _C = 225 RH _A + T68S + S70N
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	93.10	79.31	75.86	79.31	225RH _D = 225 RH _B + 225RH _C 225RH _E = 225 RH _A + L78V

Legend: (*) invariant residues as defined either by the Kabat consensus sequences i.e. 95% or greater occurrence within Kabat subgroup (Kabat *et al.*, 1991) (in the case of columns 5 and 6) or as part of the canonical structure for the CDR loops (in the case of column 8) as defined by Chothia *et al.*, (1989); (**BOLD**) positions in Frs and CDRs where the human amino acid residue was replaced by the corresponding mouse residue (UNDERLINE) positions in Frs where the human residue differs from the analogous mouse residue number; (δ) numbering of changes in the human Frs; (mouse C225) amino acid sequence of the V_H region from chimeric C225 antibody; (mouse IB) consensus sequence of mouse V_H regions from subgroup IB (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (human III) consensus sequence of human V_H regions from subgroup III (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (Human Donors: 38PI) amino acid sequence from human antibody 38PI'CL (Schroeder Jr *et al.* 1987); (Surface or Buried) position of amino acid in relation to the rest of the residues in both chains of the antibody variable regions; (225RH_A) amino acid sequence of the first version of the reshaped human mAb H225 V_H region. (Core packing of the first version of the reshaped human mAb H225 V_H region (Core packing AA/Packing AA) amino acids located at the V_L/V_H interface as defined by Chothia *et al.* (1985); (Canonical AA) amino acids defined by Chothia and Lesk (1987), Chothia *et al.* (1989), Tramontano *et al.* (1990) and Chothia *et al.* (1992) as being important for CDR loop conformation.

Table 10. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_A.

Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
225RK _A .LEAD (88mer)	C T G G A G A C T G A G T C A G T A C G A T T T C A C T T C T G G A G G C T C G A A T C C A G A A A A G C A A A A A T A C T T G G T T C T G A G G T G T G G A T A C C A T G G T
225RK _A .FR1 (80mer)	T C G T A C T G A C T C A G T C T C C A G C C A C C C T G T C T T T G A G T C C A G G A G A A A G A G C C A C C C T C T C C T G C A G G G C C A G T C A G A G T
225RK _A .FR2a (74mer)	G A G A T A G A C T C A G A A G C A T A C T T T A T G A G A A G C C T T G G A G C C T G G C C A G G T C T T T G C T G A T A C C A G T G T A T G T T
225RK _A .FR3 (71mer)	G G C T T C T C A T A A A G T A T G C T T C T G A G T C T A T C T C T G G A A T C C C T G C C A G G T T T A G T G G C A G T G G A T C A G G G
225RK _A .FR3a (77mer)	T T T T G T T G A C A G T A A T A A A C T G C A A A A T C T T C A G G C T C C A C A C T G C T G A T G G T A A G A G T A A A A T C T G T C C C T G A T C C
225RK _A .CDR3 (33mer)	G A T T T T G C A G T T T A T T A C T G T C A A C A A A A T A A T
225RK _A .FR4a (68mer)	T C T A G A A G G A T C C A C T C A C G T T T C A G C T C C A C C T T G G T C C C T C C A C C G A A C G T G G T T G G C C A G T T A T T
225RK _A .V78L (42mer)	A C T C T T A C C A T C A G C A G T C T G G A G C C T G A A G A T T T T G C A G T T
225RK _A .L108I (57mer)	T C T A G A A G G A T C C A C T C A C G T T T G A T C T C C A C C T T G G T C C C T C C A C C G A A C G T G G T T

Table 10. continued...

225RK_A-LS7 leader
(99mer)

A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G A
A G C C C C A G C T C A G C T T C T C T
T C C T C T T G C T T C T C T G G C T C
C C A G A T A C C A C C G G A G A A A T
C G T A C T G A C T C A G T C T C C A

Table 11. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_B.

Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
225RK _B .K49Y (60mer)	C A G C A A A G A C C T G G C C A G G C T C C A A G G C T T C T C A T A T A T T A T G C T T C T G A G T C T A T C T C T
APCR40 (25mer)	C T G A G A G T G C A C C A T A T G C G G T G T G

Table 12. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region gene 225RH_A.

Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
225RH _A .FR1 (37mer)	GGTGCAGCTGGTCGAGTCTG GGGGAGGCTTGGTACAG
225RH _A .FR1a (50mer)	GGCTGTACCAAGCCTCCCCC AGACTCGACCAGCTGCACCT CACACTGGAC
225RH _A .CDR1a (64mer)	CCCAGTGTTACACCATAGTTA GTTAATGAGAAATCCGGAGAC TGCACAGGAGAGTCTCAGGG ACCC
225RH _A .FR2 (63mer)	TTAACCTAACTATGGTGTACA CTGGGTTCGCCAGGCTACAG GAAAGGGTCTGGAGTGGCTG GGA
225RH _A .FR3a (74mer)	CTGTTTCATTTGTCAGATACAG GGAGTTCTTGGCATTTTCCT TGGAGATGGTCAGTCGACTT GTGAAAGGTGTATT
225RH _A .FR3 (73mer)	CTCCCTGTATCTGCAAATGA ACAGTCTCAGAGCCGGGGAC ACAGCCGTGTATTACTGTGC CAGAGCCCTCACCC
225RH _A .FR4a (65mer)	GGATCCACTCACCTGAAGAG ACAGTGACCATAGTCCCTTG GCCCCAGTAAGCAAA

Table 13. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region genes 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D and 225RH_E.

Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
225RH _B .T41P-S (35mer)	G G G T T C G C C A G G C T C C A G G A A A G G G T C T G G A G T G G
225RH _B .T41P-AS (30mer)	T C C T G G A G C C T G G C G A A C C C A G T G T A C A C C
225RH _C .T68S/S70N (46mer)	C A C A A G T C G A C T G A G C A T C A A C A A G G A A A A T G C C A A G A A C T C C C T G
225RH _E .L78V (72mer)	C A C A A G T C G A C T G A C C A T C T T C A A G G A A A A T G C C A A G A A C T C C G T T T A T C T G C A A A T G A A C A G T C T C A G A G C
APCR10 (25mer)	T A C G C A A A C C G C C T C T C C C C G C G C G
APCR40 (25mer)	C T G A G A G T G C A C C A T A T G C G G T G T G
RSP (Reverse Sequencing Primer) (24mer)	A G C G G A T A A C A A T T T C A C A C A G G A
UP (Universal Primer) (24mer)	C G C C A G G G T T T T C C C A G T C A C G A C

WHAT WE CLAIM IS:

1. A polypeptide lacking the constant region and the variable light chain of an antibody, the polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R, or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
2. A polypeptide according to Claim 1, comprising amino acid sequences N Y G V H and G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
3. A polypeptide consisting of the amino acid sequence N Y G V H or G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R.
4. A polypeptide consisting of the amino acid sequence N Y G V H or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
5. A polypeptide according to Claim 1 conjugated to an effector molecule.
6. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule inhibits tumor growth.
7. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is cytotoxic.
8. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is doxorubicin.
9. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is cisplatin.
10. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is taxol.
11. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is a signal transduction inhibitor.
12. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is a ras inhibitor.

13. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is a cell cycle inhibitor.
14. DNA encoding a polypeptide lacking the constant region and the variable light chain of an antibody, the polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
15. DNA encoding the polypeptide of Claim 14 comprising amino acid sequences N Y G V H and G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
16. DNA encoding a polypeptide according to Claim 14 conjugated to an effector molecule.
17. DNA encoding a polypeptide according to Claim 16 wherein the effector molecule inhibits tumor growth.
18. A molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule.
19. A molecule according to Claim 18 wherein the effector molecule is a cytotoxic agent.
20. A molecule according to Claim 19 wherein the cytotoxic agent is doxorubicin.
21. A molecule according to Claim 19 wherein the cytotoxic agent is taxol.
22. A molecule according to Claim 19 wherein the cytotoxic agent is cisplatin.
23. A molecule comprising: a constant region of a human antibody; a variable region other than the CDRs of a human antibody, the variable region comprising a kappa light chain and a heavy chain, and the CDRs of monoclonal antibody 225.

24. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the constant region has an amino acid sequence of an IgG.
25. A molecule according to claim 24 wherein the IgG is IgG1.
26. A molecule according to claim 23 that is reshaped according to Example IV.
27. A molecule according to claim 23, wherein the heavy chain has at least one amino acid, according to the Kabat numbering system, at an amino acid position selected from the group consisting of 24, 28, 29, 30, 41, 48, 49, 67, 68, 70, 71 and 78, substituted with a murine amino acid selected from the corresponding Kabat amino acid position.
28. A molecule according to claim 23, wherein the kappa light chain has an amino acid, according to the Kabat numbering system, at position 49 substituted with a murine amino acid selected from the corresponding Kabat amino acid position.
29. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence selected from 225RK_A or 225RK_B.
30. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the heavy chain variable region has an amino acid sequence selected from 225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, or 225RH_E.
31. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.
32. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

33. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

34. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

35. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

36. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.

37. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

38. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

39. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

40. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

41. A molecule according to Claim 23, wherein the molecule is attached to an effector molecule.

42. A molecule according to Claim 39, wherein the effector molecule is a cytotoxic agent.

43. A molecule according to Claim 40, wherein the cytotoxic agent is doxorubicin.

44. A molecule according to Claim 40, wherein the cytotoxic agent is taxol.

45. A molecule according to Claim 40, wherein the cytotoxic agent is cisplatin

46. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of the polypeptide according to Claim 1.

47. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of the polypeptide according to Claim 3 or Claim 4.

48. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the variable region of monoclonal antibody 225.

49. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of a molecule having a constant region of a human antibody; a variable region other than the CDRs of a human antibody, the variable region comprising a kappa light chain and heavy chain,
5 and the CDRs of monoclonal antibody 225.

50. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has an amino acid sequence selected from 225RK_A or 225RK_B.

51. A method according to claim 47, wherein the heavy chain variable region has an amino acid sequence selected from 225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, or 225RH_E.

52. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.

53. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

54. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

55. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

56. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

57. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.

58. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

59. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.
60. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.
61. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.
62. A method according to any of Claims 44-47, further comprising administering a cytotoxic agent.
63. A molecule according to Claim 60, wherein the cytotoxic agent is doxorubicin.
64. A molecule according to Claim 60, wherein the cytotoxic agent is taxol.
65. A molecule according to Claim 60, wherein the cytotoxic agent is cisplatin
66. The method according to Claim 44 or Claim 45, wherein the polypeptide is conjugated to an effector molecule.
67. The method according to Claim 46 or Claim 47, wherein the molecule is conjugated to an effector molecule.
68. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is cytotoxic.
69. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is doxorubicin.
70. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is cisplatin.

71. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is taxol.
72. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is a signal transduction inhibitor.
73. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is a ras inhibitor.
74. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is a cell cycle inhibitor.
75. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is cytotoxic.
76. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is doxorubicin.
77. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is cisplatin.
78. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is taxol.
79. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is a signal transduction inhibitor.
80. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is a ras inhibitor.
81. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is a cell cycle inhibitor.
82. The method according to any of Claims 44-47, wherein the tumor cells are prostatic tumor cells.
83. The method according to Claim 80, wherein the prostatic tumor cells are late stage prostatic tumor cells.

84. A nucleic acid molecule that encodes a molecule comprising: a constant region of a human antibody; a variable region other than the CDRs of a human antibody, the variable region comprising a kappa light chain and a heavy chain, and the CDRs of monoclonal antibody 225.
85. A vector comprising the nucleic acid molecule claim of 84.
86. A vector according to claim 85, wherein the vector is an expressible vector.
87. A vector according to claim 86, wherein the vector is expressible in a prokaryotic cell.
88. A vector according to claim 86, wherein the vector is expressible in a eukaryotic cell.
89. A prokaryotic cell comprising the expressible vector of claim 87.
90. An eukaryotic cell comprising the expressible vector of claim 88.
91. A pharmaceutical composition, comprising the molecule of claim 23 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Figure 1

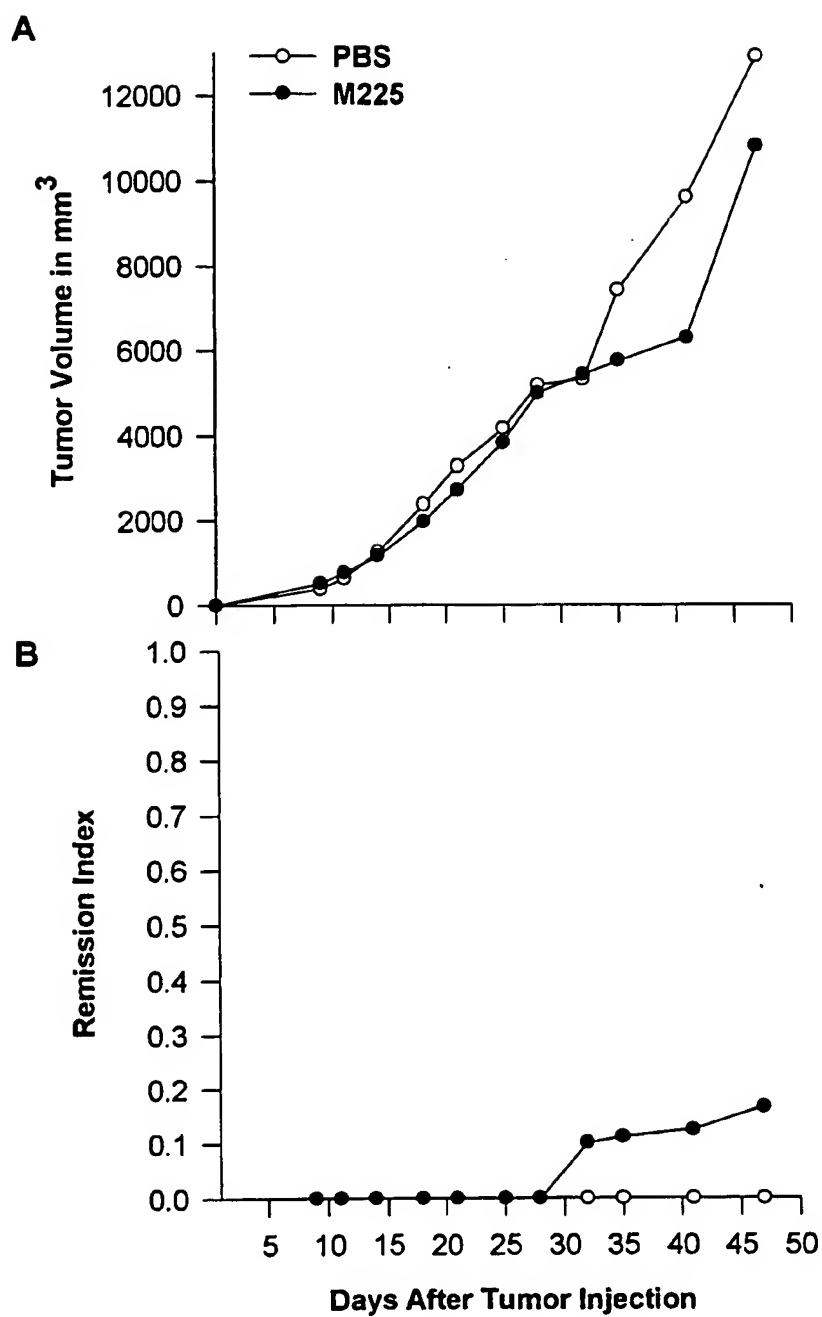


Figure 2

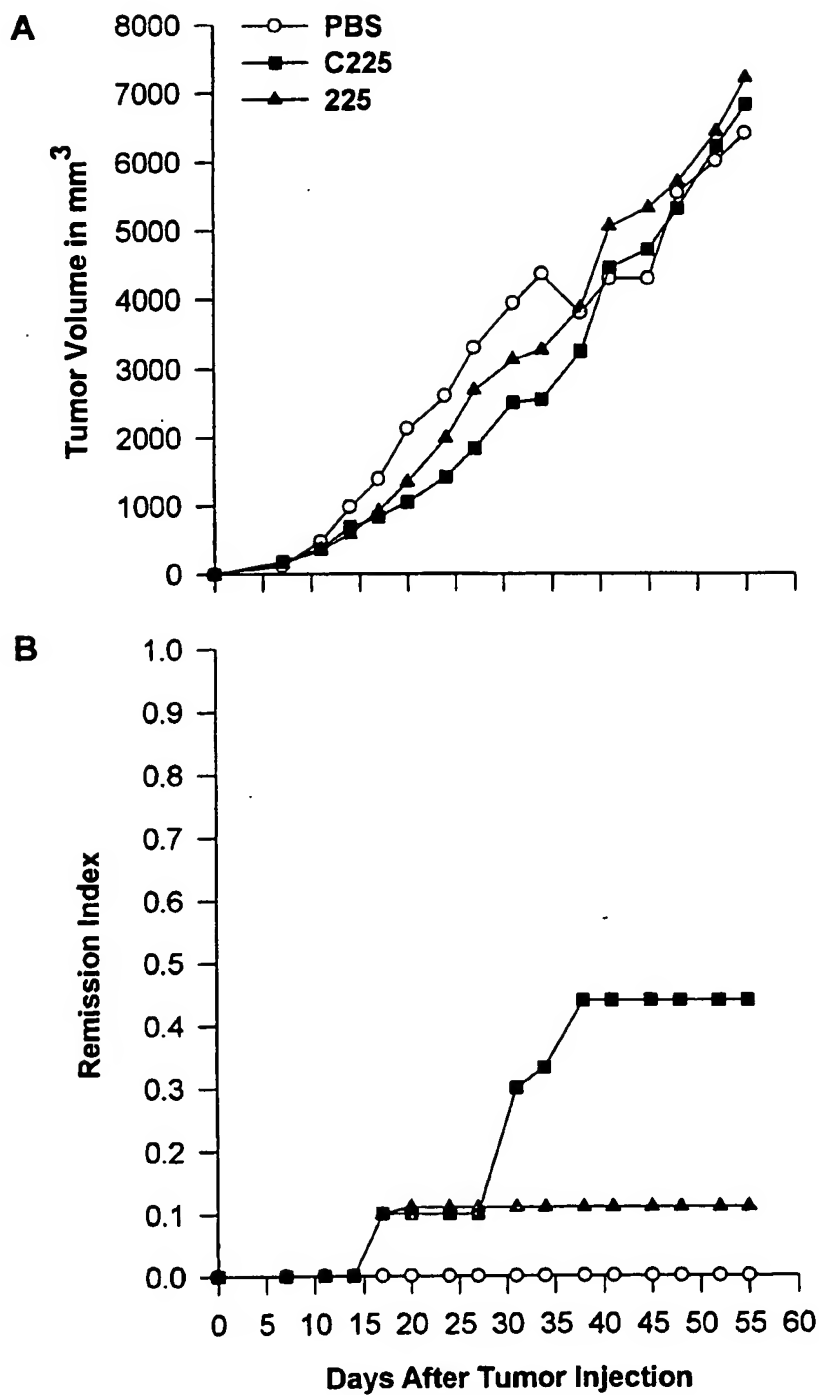


Figure 3

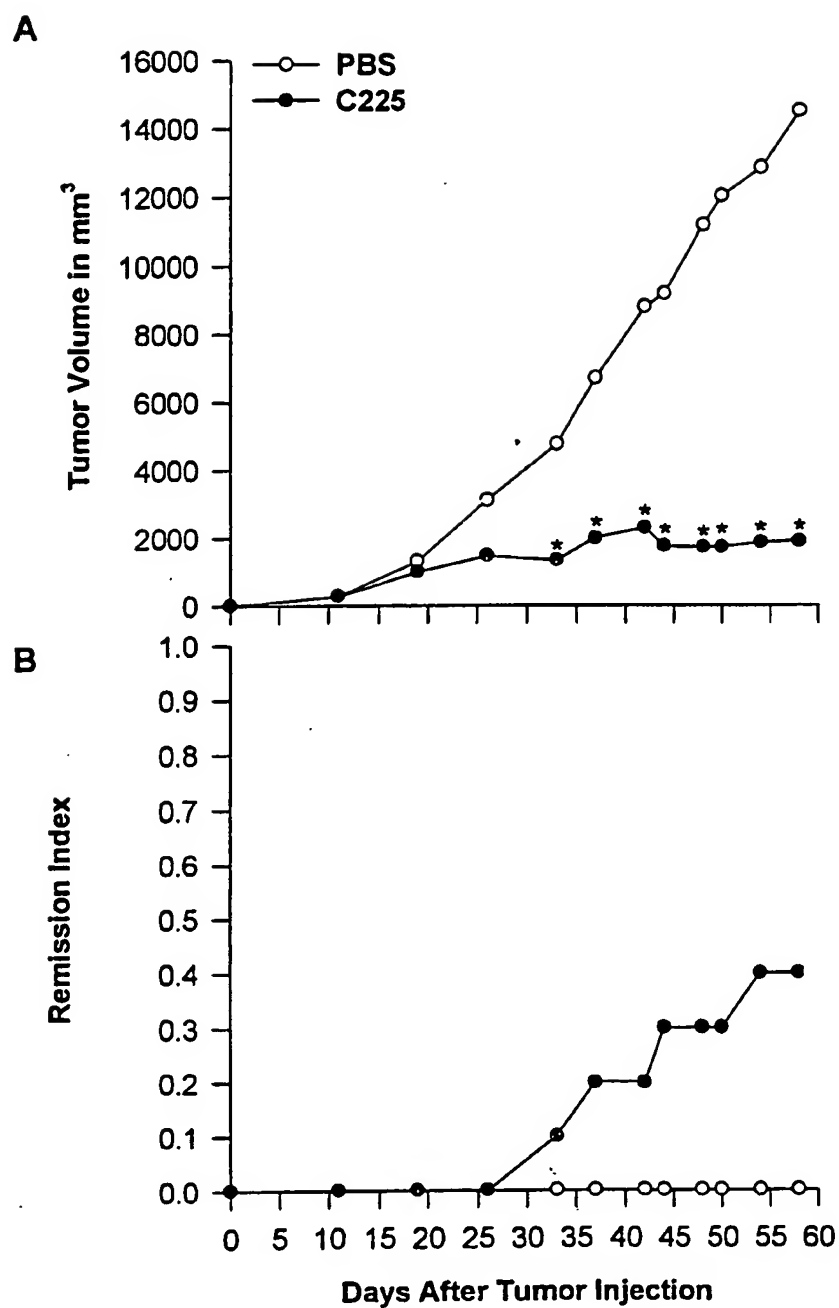
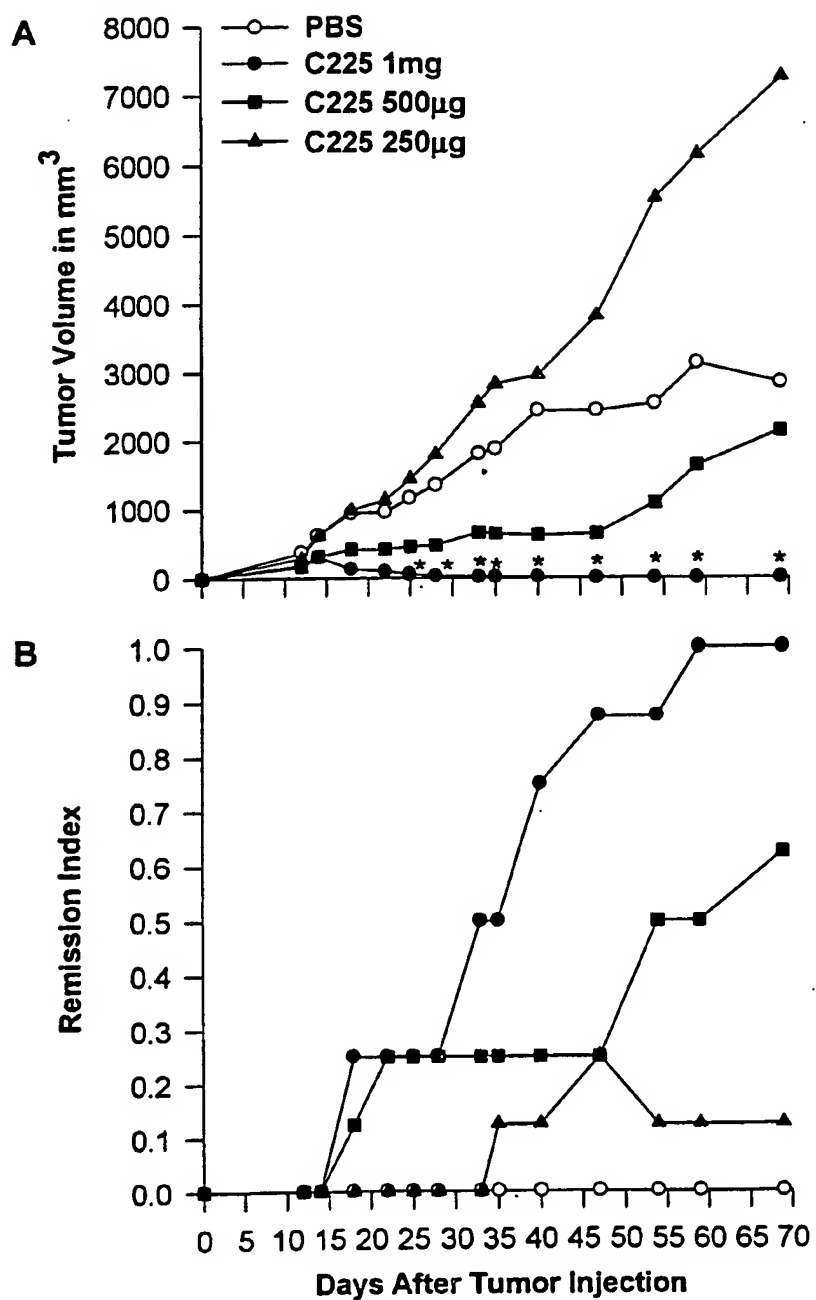


Figure 4



Inhibition of A431 with C225-vH1 and C225-vH2 Peptides
Measured by ^3H -Thy Incorporation

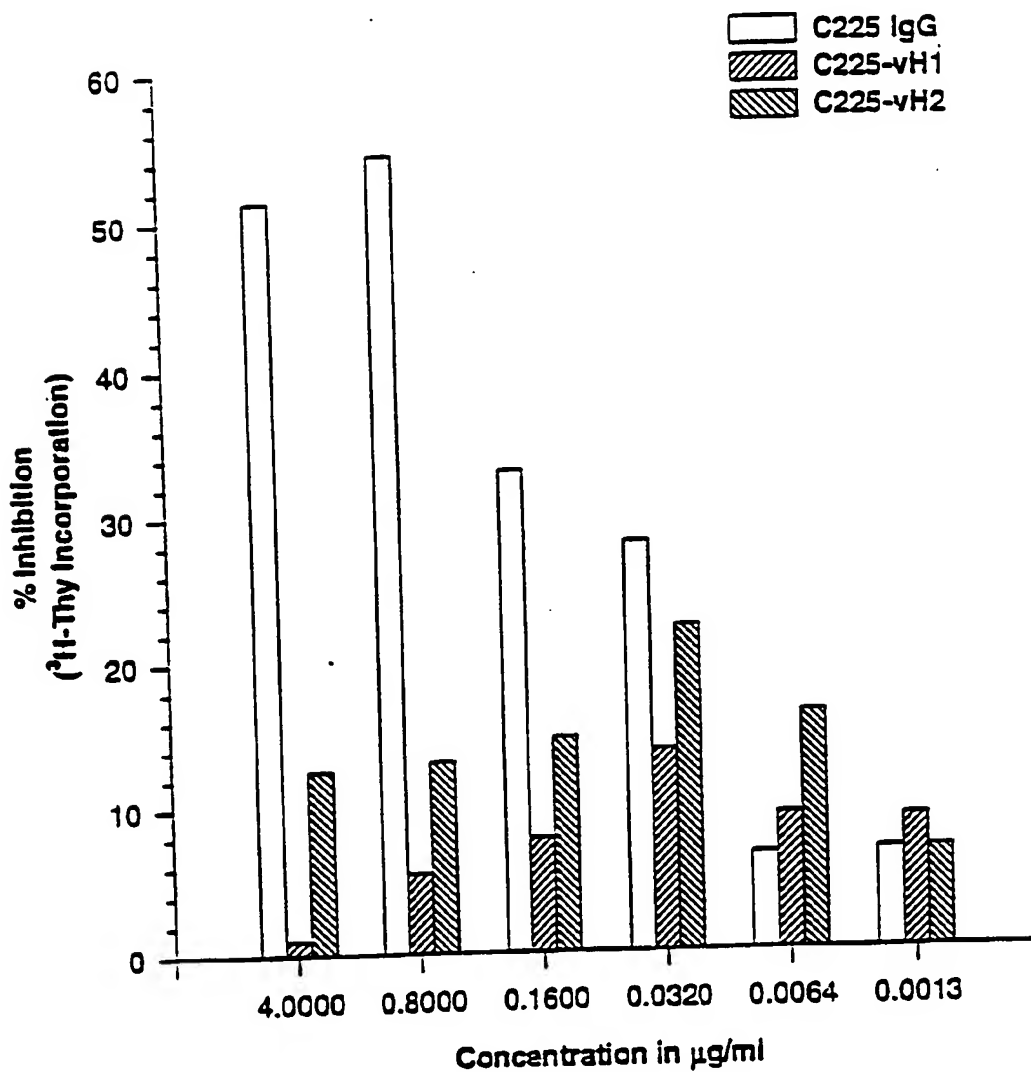


Figure 5

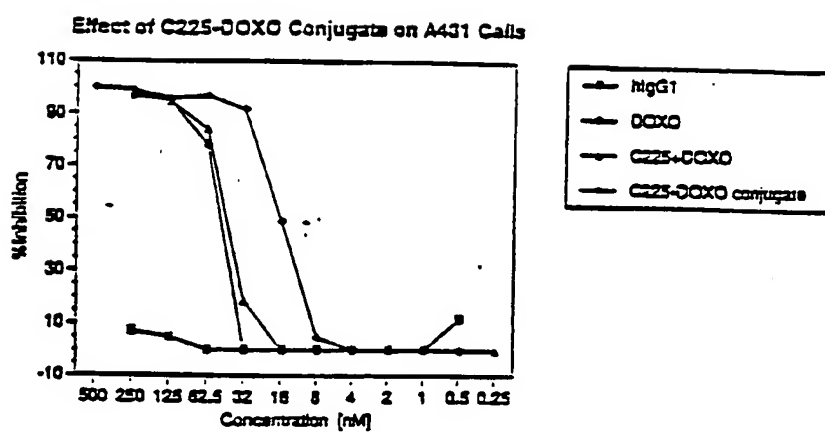


Figure 6

Figure 7

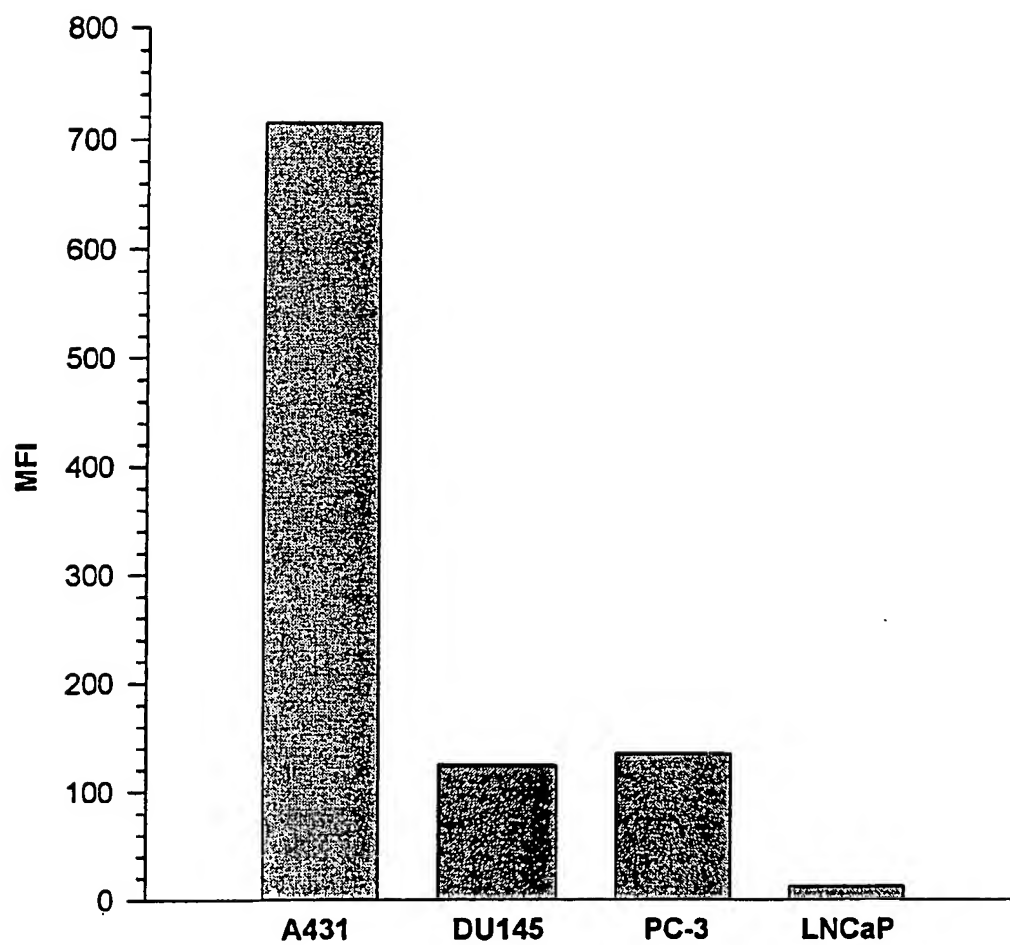
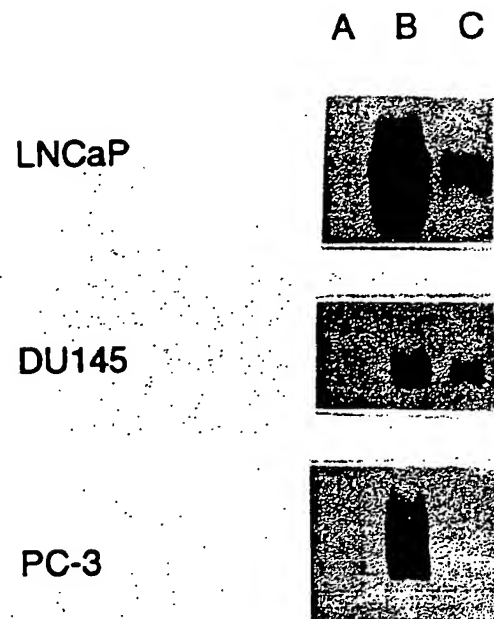


Figure 8



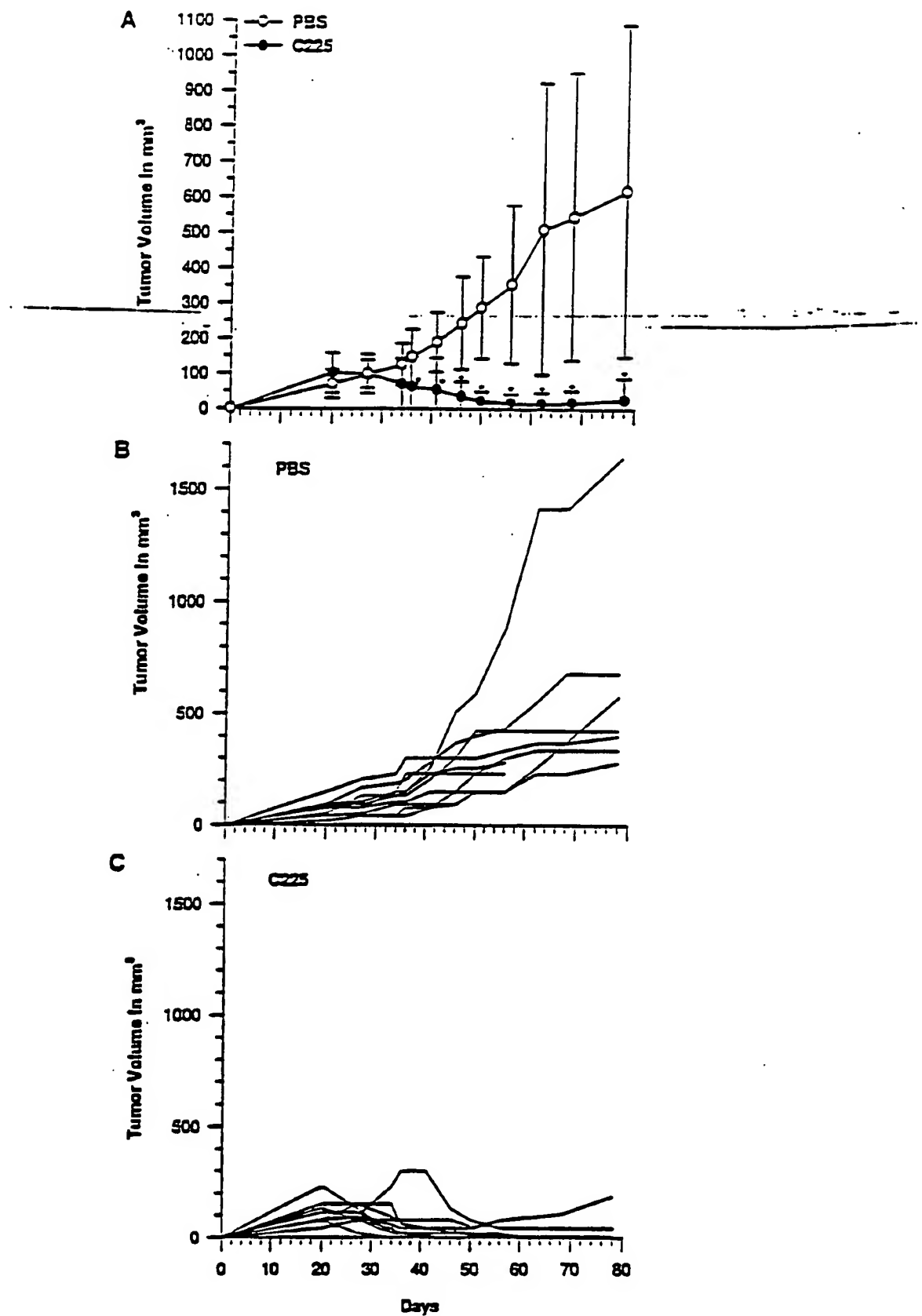


Figure 9

Figure 10

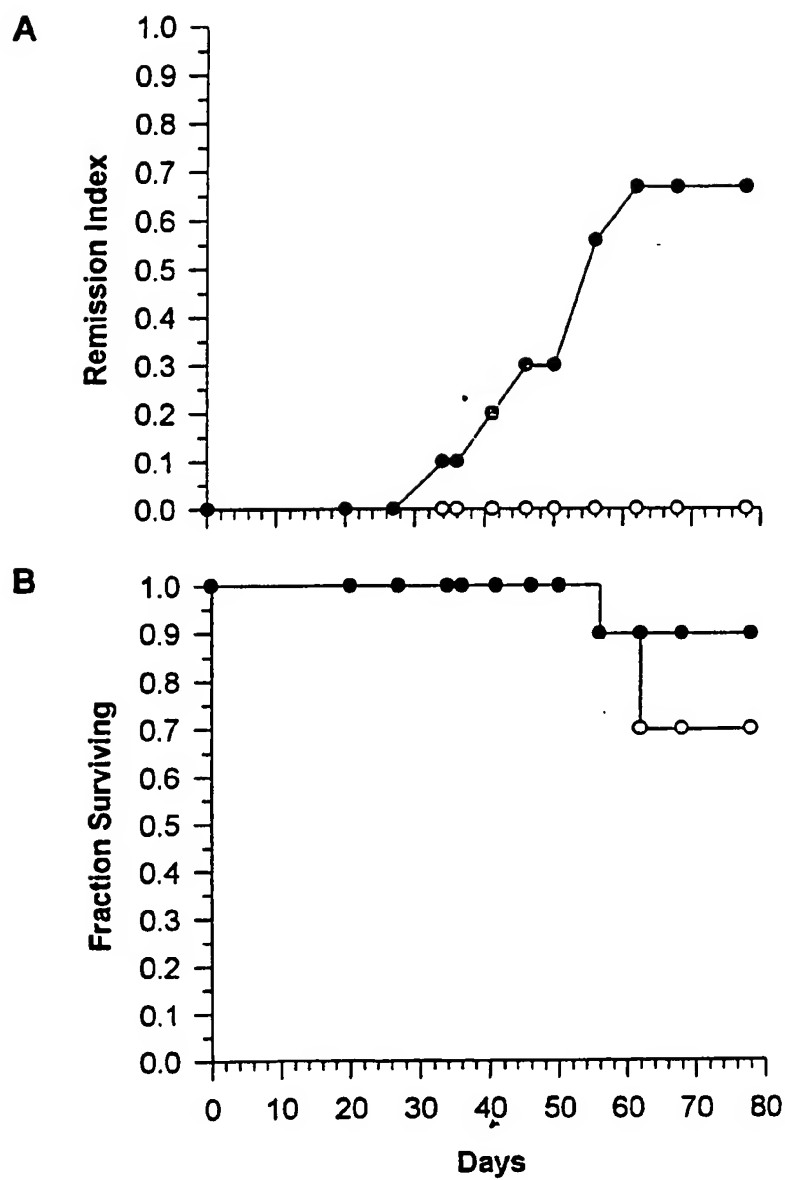


Figure 11: Schematic representation of the pKN100 mammalian expression vector used for the expression of the kappa light chains of the chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 antibody.

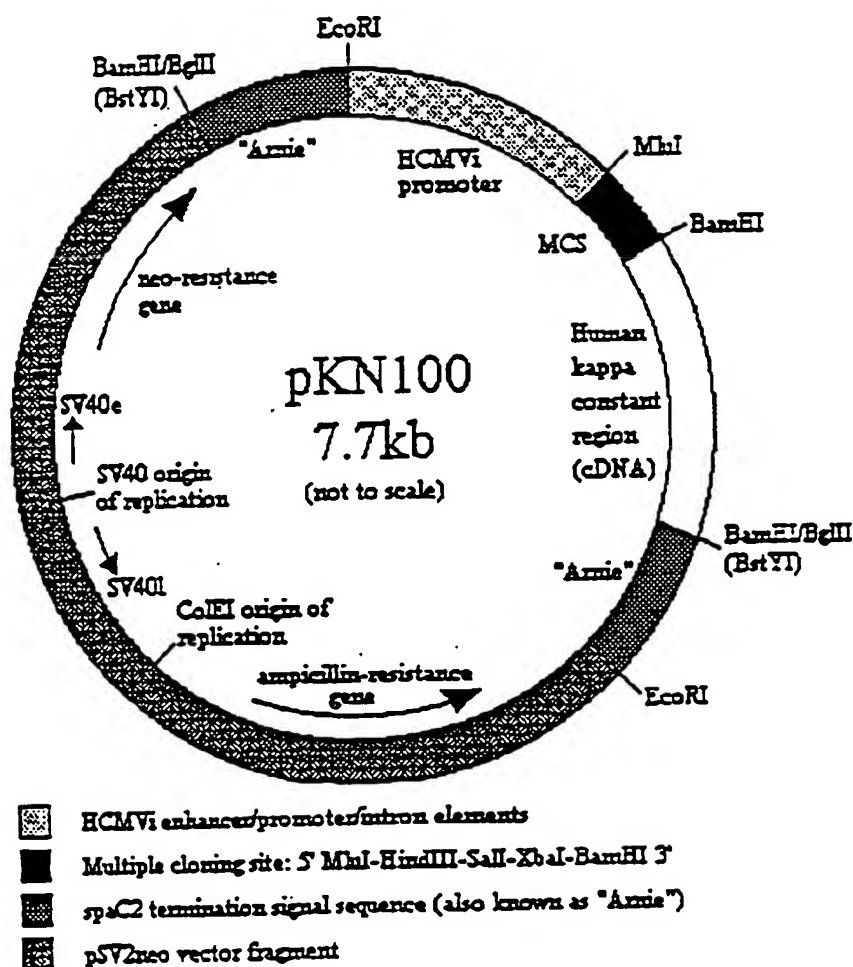


Figure 12: Schematic representation of the pG1D105 mammalian expression vector used for the expression of the heavy chains of the chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 antibody.

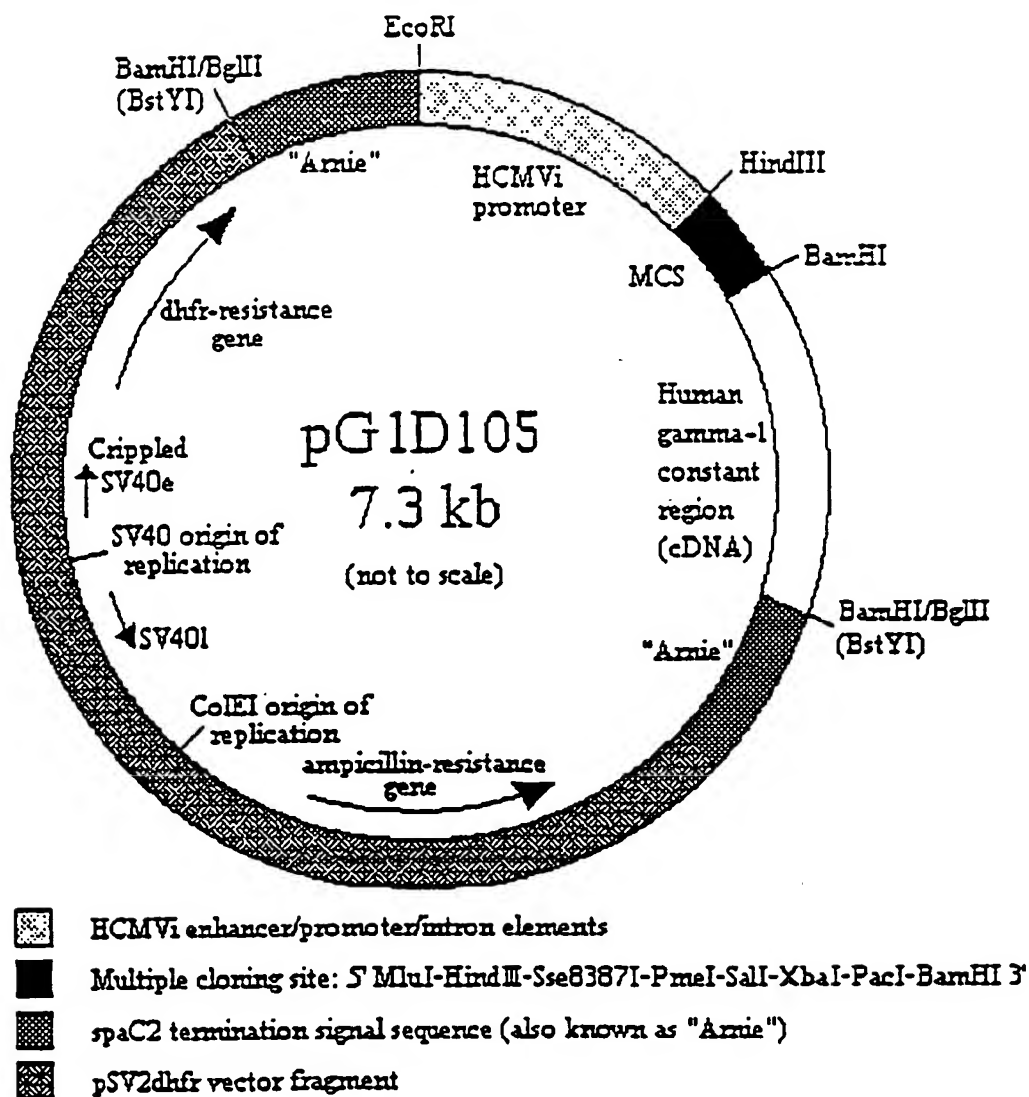


Figure 13: DNA and peptide sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the M225 antibody. The PCR-clones from which this information was obtained were amplified using the degenerate primer MKV4 (7).

```

MKV4      atgagggccctgctcagtttcttggttcttg
           a      a t      aa

atgagggccctgctcagtttcttggttcttggtttctggattccagcctccagaagt
1  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
tactcccggggacgagtc aaagaaccgaagaacgaaaagacctaagggtcggaggtcttca

M R A P A Q F L G F L L F W I P A S R S

gacatcttgctgactcagtcctccagtcacacctgtctgtgagtcaggagaaagagtcagt
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ctgtagaacgactgagtcagaggtcagtaggacagacactcaggtcctctttctcagtc

D I L L T Q S P V I L S V S P G E R V S

ttctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaaacatacactggtatcagcaaagaaca
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
aagaggacgtcccggtcagtcctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgaccatagtcgtttcttgt

F S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W Y Q Q R T

aatggttctccaaggcttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtcctatctctgggatcccttcc
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
ttaccaagaggttccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatagagaccctagggaagg

N G S P R L L I K Y A S E S I S G I P S

aggtttagtggcagtggtacaggacagattttactcttagcatcaacagtggtgagtcct
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
tccaaatcacgtcacctagtcctgtctaaaatgagaatcgtagttgtcacacctcaga

R F S G S G S G T D F T L S I N S V E S

gaagatattgcagattattactgtcaacaaaataataactggccaaccacgttcggtgct
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
cttctataacgtctaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggttggtgcaagccacga

E D I A D Y Y C Q Q N N N W P T T F G A

gggaccaagctggagctgaaa
361 -----+-----+ 381
ccctggttcgacctcgacttt

G T K L E L K

```

Figure 14: DNA and peptide sequences of the heavy chain variable region of the M225 antibody. The PCR-clones from which this information was obtained were amplified using the degenerate primer MHV6 (7).

MHV6 atggctgtcttggcgctgctcttctgc
 c a g a

atggctgtcttggcgctgctcttctgcctggtagacattcccaagctgtgtcctatcccag
1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
taccgacagaaccgcgacgagaagacggaccactgtaagggttcgacacaggatagggtc
M A V L A L L F C L V T F P S C V L S Q

gtgcagctgaagcagtcaggacctggcctagtgcagccctcacagagcctgtccatcacc
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
gacgtcgacttcgtcagtcctggaccggatcacgtcgggagtgctctcgacaggttagtgg
V Q L K Q S G P G L V Q P S Q S L S I T

tgcacagtctctggtttctcattaactaactatgggtgtacactgggttcgccagtcctcca
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
acgtgtcagagaccaagagtaattgattgataccacatgtgacccaagcggtcagaggtc
C T V S G F S L T N Y G V H W V R Q S P

ggaaagggctctggagtggctgggagtgatatggagtgggtggaaacacagactataatata
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
cctttcccagacctcaccgacctcactataacctcaccacctttgtgtctgatattatgt
G K G L E W L G V I W S G G N T D Y N T

cctttcacatccagactgagcatcaacaaggacaattccaagagccaagttttctttaaa
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
ggaaagtgtaggtctgactcgtagttgttcctgttaagggttctcggttcaaaagaaattt
P F T S R L S I N K D N S K S Q V F F K

atgaacagtctgcaatcctaataacacagccatatattactgtgccagagccctcacctac
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
tacttgtcagacgtagattactgtgtcgggtatataatgacacgggtctcgggagtggtatg
M N S L Q S N D T A I Y Y C A R A L T Y

tatgattacgagtttgcttactggggccaagggactctgggtcactgtctctgca
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 414
atactaatactcaaacgaatgaccccggttccttgagaccagtgacagagacgt
Y D Y E F A Y W G Q G T L V T V S A

Figure 15: DNA and peptide sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the C225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatgagggccctgctcagtttcttggttcttgctttctggatt
1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtactcccggggacgagtc aaagaaccgaagaacgaaaagacctaa

      M R A P A Q F L G F L L F W I

ccagcctccagaagtgacatcttgctgactcagtcctccagtcacctgtctgtgagtcca
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ggtcgggaggtcttcactgtagaacgactgagtcagaggtcagtaggacagacactcaggt

      P A S R S D I L L T Q S P V I L S V S P

ggagaaagagtcagtttctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaacatacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
cctctttctcagtc aaagaggacgtcccggtcagtcctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgacc

      G E R V S F S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W

tatcagcaaagaacaaatggttctccaaggcttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtctatc
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
atagtcgtttcttggtttaccaagaggttccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatag

      Y Q Q R T N G S P R L L I K Y A S E S I

tctgggatcccttccagggttagtggtgagtgatcagggacagattttactcttagcatc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
agaccctaggggaaggtccaaatcacctgtcacctagtcctgtctaaaatgagaatcgtag

      S G I P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L S I

aacagtggtgagtcctgaagatattgcagattattactgtcaacaaaataataactggcca
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
ttgtcacacctcagacttctataacgtctaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggt

      N S V E S E D I A D Y Y C Q Q N N N W P

accacgttcggtgctgggaccaagctggagctgaaacgtgagtggtccttctaga
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 416
tggtgcaagccacgacctggttcgacctgactttgcactcacctaggaagatct

      T T F G A G T K L E L K

```

Figure 16: DNA and peptide sequences of the heavy chain variable region of the C225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggctgtcttggggctgctcttctgcctgggtgacattcccaagc
1  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtaccgacagaaccccgacgagaagacggaccactgtaagggttcg

      M A V L G L L F C L V T F P S

tgtgtcctatcccaggtgcagctgaagcagtcaggacctggcctagtgcagccctcacag
61  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
acacaggataggggtccacgtcgacttcgtcagtcctggaccggatcacgtcgggagtgtc

      C V L S Q V Q L K Q S G P G L V Q P S Q

agcctgtccatcacctgcacagtctctggtttctcattaactaactatggtgtacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
tcggacaggtagtggacgtgtcagagaccaaagagtaattgattgataccacatgtgacc

      S L S I T C T V S G F S L T N Y G V H W

gttcgccagtcctccaggaaaggtctggagtggtgggagtgatatggagtggtggaac
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
caacgggtcagaggtcctttccagacctcaccgacctcactatacctcaccaccttg

      V R Q S P G K G L E W L G V I W S G G N

acagactataatacacctttcacatccagactgagcatcaacaaggacaattccaagagc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
tgtctgatattatgtggaaagtgtaggtctgactcgtagttgttcctgttaaggttctcg

      T D Y N T P F T S R L S I N K D N S K S

caagttttctttaaaatgaacagtcctgcaatctaataacacagccatatattactgtgcc
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
gttcaaaagaaattttacttgtcagacggttagattactgtgtcggtatataatgacacgg

      Q V F F K M N S L Q S N D T A I Y Y C A

agagccctcacctactatgattacgagtttgcttactggggccaagggactctggtcact
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 420
tctcgggagtggtgataactaatgtcacaacgaatgaccccggttcctgagaccagtga

      R A L T Y Y D Y E F A Y W G Q G T L V T

gtctctgcaggtgagtggtatcc
421 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 442
cagagacgtccactcacctagg

      V S A

```

Figure 17: DNA and peptide sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the C225 antibody with the modified leader sequence from the kappa light chain of L7'CL antibody (28).

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggtatccacacctgagttccttgatatttttgcttttctggatt
1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtaccataggtgtggactcaaggaacataaaaaacgaaaagacctaa

      M V S T P E F L V F L L F W I

ccagcctccagaggtgacatcttgctgactcagtcctccagtcacctgtctgtgagtcga
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ggtcggagggtctccactgtagaacgactgagtcagaggtcagtaggacagacactcaggt

P A S R G D I L L T Q S P V I L S V S P

ggagaaagagtcagtttctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaacatacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
cctctttctcagtcaaagaggacgtcccggtcagtcctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgacc

G E R V S F S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W

tatcagcaaagaacaaatggttctccaaggcttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtcctatc
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
atagtcgtttcttggtttaccaagaggttccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatag

Y Q Q R T N G S P R L L I K Y A S E S I

tctgggatcccttccaggttagtggcagtggtcagggacagattttactcttagcatc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
agaccctagggaaaggtccaaatcacctgtcacctagtcacctgtctaaaatgagaatcgtag

S G I P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L S I

aacagtgtggagtcctgaagatattgcagattattactgtcaacaaaataaactggcca
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
ttgtcacacctcagacttctataacgtctaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggt

N S V E S E D I A D Y Y C Q Q N N N W P

accacgttcggtgctgggaccaagctggagctgaaacgtgagtggtccttctaga
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 416
tggtgcaagccacgacctggttcgacctgcactttgcactcacctaggaagatct

T T F G A G T K L E L K

```

Figure 18: Typical example of the results of a cell ELISA to measure the binding affinity of chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 (225RK_A/225RH_A) antibodies to epidermal growth factor receptor expressed on the surface of A431 cells.

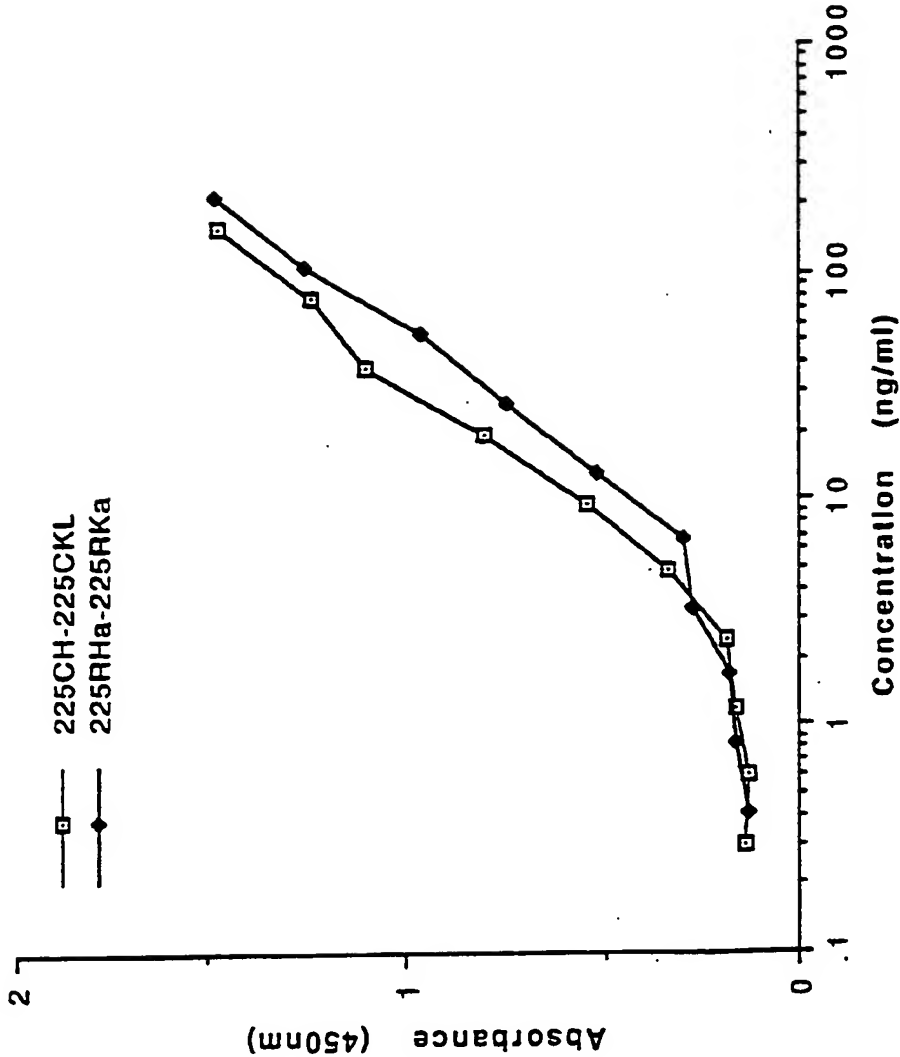


Figure 19: DNA and peptide sequences of the first version (225RK_A) of the kappa light chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggaagccccagctcagcttctcttccctcttgccttctctggtc
1  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtaccttcggggtcgagtcgaagagaaggagaaacgaagagaccgag

      M E A P A Q L L F L L L L W L

ccagataccaccggagaaatcgtagctcagctctccagccaccctgtctttgagtcca
61  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ggtctatggtggcctctttagcatgactgagtcagaggtcggtgggacagaaactcaggt

P D T T G E I V L T Q S P A T L S L S P

ggagaaagagccaccctctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaacatacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
cctctttctcggtgggagaggacgtcccggtcagttctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgacc

G E R A T L S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W

tatcagcaaagacctggccagggtccaaggttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtctatc
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
atagtcgtttctggaccggtccgaggtccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatag

Y Q Q R P G Q A P R L L I K Y A S E S I

tctggaatccctgccagggttagtggcagtggtacagggacagattttactcttaccatc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
agaccttagggacggtccaaatcacctgtcacctagtcctgtctaaaatgagaatggtag

S G I P A R F S G S G S G T D F T L T I

agcagctctggagcctgaagattttgagtttattactgtcaacaaaataataactggcca
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
tcgtcagacctcggaacttctaaaacgtcaaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggt

S S L E P E D F A V Y Y C Q Q N N N W P

accacgttcggtggagggaccaaggtggagatcaaacgtgagtggtaccttctaga
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 416
tggtgcaagccacctccctgggtccacctctagtttgactcacctaggaagatct

T T F G G G T K V E I K

```

Figure 20: DNA and peptide sequences of the first version (225RH_A) of the heavy chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggagtttgggctgagctggctttttcttgaggctattttaaaa
1  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtacctcaaaccgactcgaccgaaaaagaacaccgataaaatttt

      M E F G L S W L F L V A I L K

gggtgtccagtgtgaggtgcagctggtcgagctctgggggaggcttggtacagcctgggggg
61  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ccacaggtcacactccacgtcgaccagctcagacccctccgaaccatgtcggacccccc

      G V Q C E V Q L V E S G G G L V Q P G G

tccctgagactctcctgtgcagctctcggattctcattaactaactatggtgtacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
agggactctgagaggacacgtcagaggcctaagagtaattgattgataccacatgtgacc

      S L R L S C A V S G F S L T N Y G V H W

gttcgccaggctacaggaaagggtctggagtggtgggagtgatatggagtggtggaaac
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
caagcgggtccgatgtcctttccagacctcaccgaccctcactatacctcaccaccttg

      V R Q A T G K G L E W L G V I W S G G N

acagactataatacacctttcacaagtcgactgaccatctccaaggaaaaatgccagaac
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
tgtctgatattatgtggaaagtgttcagctgactggtagagggttccttttacggttcttg

      T D Y N T P F T S R L T I S K E N A K N

tccctgtatctgcaaatgaacagttctcagagccggggacacagccgtgtattactgtgcc
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
agggacatagacgtttacttgtcagagttctcgccctgtgtcggcacataatgacacgg

      S L Y L Q M N S L R A G D T A V Y Y C A

agagccctcacctactatgattacgagtttgcttactggggccaagggactatggtcact
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 420
tctcgggagtggtatgataactaatgctcaaacgaatgaccccggttccttgataccagtga

      R A L T Y Y D Y E F A Y W G Q G T M V T

gtctcttcagggtgagtggtatcc
421 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 442
cagagaaggtccactcacctagg

      V S S

```


	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250	251	252	253	254	255	256	257	258	259	260	261	262	263	264	265	266	267	268	269	270	271	272	273	274	275	276	277	278	279	280	281	282	283	284	285	286	287	288	289	290	291	292	293	294	295	296	297	298	299	300	301	302	303	304	305	306	307	308	309	310	311	312	313	314	315	316	317	318	319	320	321	322	323	324	325	326	327	328	329	330	331	332	333	334	335	336	337	338	339	340	341	342	343	344	345	346	347	348	349	350	351	352	353	354	355	356	357	358	359	360	361	362	363	364	365	366	367	368	369	370	371	372	373	374	375	376	377	378	379	380	381	382	383	384	385	386	387	388	389	390	391	392	393	394	395	396	397	398	399	400	401	402	403	404	405	406	407	408	409	410	411	412	413	414	415	416	417	418	419	420	421	422	423	424	425	426	427	428	429	430	431	432	433	434	435	436	437	438	439	440	441	442	443	444	445	446	447	448	449	450	451	452	453	454	455	456	457	458	459	460	461	462	463	464	465	466	467	468	469	470	471	472	473	474	475	476	477	478	479	480	481	482	483	484	485	486	487	488	489	490	491	492	493	494	495	496	497	498	499	500	501	502	503	504	505	506	507	508	509	510	511	512	513	514	515	516	517	518	519	520	521	522	523	52
--	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	----

Figure 22: Amino acid sequences of the five versions (225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, 225RH_E) of the heavy chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody. Residues are numbered according to Kabat *et al.* (20). Mouse framework residues conserved in the reshaped human frameworks are highlighted in bold.

	FRAMEWORK 1																			
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
M225/C225V _H	Q	V	Q	L	K	Q	S	G	P	G	L	V	Q	P	S	Q	S	L	S	I
38P1'CL	E	V	Q	L	V	E	S	G	G	G	L	V	Q	P	G	G	S	L	R	L
225RH _A	E	V	Q	L	V	E	S	G	G	G	L	V	Q	P	G	G	S	L	R	L
225RH _B																				
225RH _C																				
225RH _D																				
225RH _E																				

	FRAMEWORK 1						CDR 1						FRAMEWORK 2											
	2	2	2	2	2	3		3	3	3	3	3	3		3	3	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	4
M225/C225V _H	S	G	F	S	L	T		N	Y	G	V	H	-	-		W	V	R	Q	S	P	G	K	G
38P1'CL	S	G	F	T	F	S		S	Y	D	M	H	-	-		W	V	R	Q	A	T	G	K	G
225RH _A	S	G	F	S	L	T		N	Y	G	V	H	-	-		W	V	R	Q	A	T	G	K	G
225RH _B																								
225RH _C																								
225RH _D																								
225RH _E																								

	FRAMEWORK 2						CDR 2										FRAMEWORK 2							
	4	4	4	4	4		5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	6	
M225/C225V _H	L	E	W	L	G		V	I	W	-	-	-	S	G	G	N	T	D	Y	N	T	P	F	T
38P1'CL	L	E	W	V	S		A	I	G	-	-	-	T	A	G	D	T	Y	Y	P	G	S	V	K
225RH _A	L	E	W	L	G		V	I	W	-	-	-	S	G	G	N	T	D	Y	N	T	P	F	T
225RH _B																								
225RH _C																								
225RH _D																								
225RH _E																								

[illegible]

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US96/09847

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL :Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/133.1, 143.1, 178.1; 435/240.27, 252.3, 320.1; 514/13, 17; 530/326, 330, 387.3, 388.2, 391.7; 536/23.1, 23.53

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, medline, cancerlit, biosis, embase

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	Journal of Cell Science, Volume 106, issued 1993, U. Vinkemeier et al., "The globular head domain of titin extends into the center of the sarcomeric M band", pages 319-330, especially ramino acid residues 208-212 of Figure 3, page 323.	1, 14, 16-17
Y	Journal of Biological Chemistry, Volume 264, No.1, issued 05 January 1989, R. Taub et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody against the Platelet Fibrinogen Receptor Contains a Sequence That Mimics a Receptor Recognition Domain in Fibrinogen", pages 259-265, especially amino acid residues 50-65 of Figure 2, page 261.	1-2, 14-15

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	*X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
E earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*G* document member of the same patent family
O document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search 06 SEPTEMBER 1996	Date of mailing of the international search report 03 OCT 1996
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Authorized officer <i>Nancy A. Johnson</i> NANCY A. JOHNSON Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US96/09847

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US,A 4,943,533 (MENDELSON ET AL.) 24 July 1990, see column 8, line 40- column 9, line 26.	1-2, 14-15; 18-45, 48-66, 68-91
X	Journal of the National Cancer Institute, Volume 85, No. 16, issued 18 August 1993, J. Baselga et al., Antitumor Effects of Doxorubicin in Combination With Anti-epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies", pages 1327-1333, see entire document and last paragraph of page 1332.	23-25
Y		-----
Y	US,A 5,225,539 (WINTER) 06 July 1993, see entire document.	18-22, 26-45, 48-66, 68-91
Y	Nature, Volume 342, issued 21/28 December 1989, C. Chothia et al., "Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable regions", pages 877-883, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Cancer Research, Volume 53, issued 15 February 1993, K. Sato et al., "Reshaping a Human Antibody to Inhibit the Interleukin 6-dependent Tumor Cell Growth", pages 851-856, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, Volume 89, issued May 1992, Carter et al. "Humanization of an anti-p185HER2 antibody for human cancer therapy" pages 4285-4289, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	WO, A 92/22653 (GENENTECH, INC.) 23 December 1992, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Proc. Natl. acad. Sci., USA. Volume 85, issued February 1988, Yang et al., "Doxorubicin conjugated with a monoclonal antibody directed to a human melanoma-associated proteoglycan suppresses the growth of established tumor xenografts in nude mice", pages 1189-1193, see entire document.	18-22, 41-45, 62-71, 74-78, 81
Y	Biochimica et Biophysica Acta, Volume 714, issued 1981, Y. Graziani et al. "Regulation of Protein Kinases Activity by Quercetin in Ehrlich Ascites Tumor Cells", pages 415-421, see entire document.	72, 79
Y	Science, Volume 260, issued 25 June 1993, G. James et al., "Benzodiazepine Peptidomimetics: Potent Inhibitors of Ras Farnesylation in Animal Cells", pages 1937-1942, see entire document.	73, 80

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No:

PCT/US96/09847

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

Please See Extra Sheet.

1. ☒ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:

4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US96/09847

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER: IPC (6):

A61K 38/08, 38/10, 39/395; C07K 7/06, 7/08, 16/28; C12N 1/21, 15/11, 15/63, 15/70, 15/79, 15/85

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER: US CL :

424/133.1, 143.1, 178.1; 435/240.27, 252.3, 320.1; 514/13, 17; 530/326, 330, 387.3, 388.2, 391.7; 536/23.1, 23.53

BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

Group I, claim(s) 1-13, 46-47, 50-62, 67 and 82, drawn to polypeptides lacking the constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody and methods of inhibiting the growth of tumor cells with said polypeptides. Claims 50-62 and 82 will be examined with Group I to the extent that they read on methods of inhibiting the growth of tumor cells utilizing polypeptides.

Group II, claim(s) 14-17, drawn to DNA encoding polypeptides lacking the constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody.

Group III, claim(s) 18-45, 62, 66, 82 and 91, drawn to molecules having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule. Claims 62 and 82 will be examined with Group III to the extent that they read on the molecules of claims 44 and 45.

Group IV, claim(s) 48-49, 50-61, 63-65, 68-81 and 83, drawn to a method of inhibiting the growth of tumor cells with molecules that contain a constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule. Claim 50-61 will be examined with Group IV to the extent that they read on a method on inhibiting tumor cell growth with said molecules.

Group V, claim(s) 84-90, drawn to DNA encoding a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody, the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule.

The inventions listed as Groups I-V do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: The corresponding special technical feature of Group I not recited in Groups II-V is a polypeptide which lacks a constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody and its use to inhibit the growth of tumor cells. The corresponding special technical feature of Group II not recited in Groups I and III-V is the DNA encoding a polypeptide which lacks a constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody. The corresponding special technical feature of Group III not recited in Groups I-II and IV-V is a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule. The corresponding special technical feature of Group IV not recited in Groups I-III and V is the method of using a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule to inhibit the growth of tumor cells. The corresponding special technical feature of Group V not recited in Groups I-IV is the DNA molecule encoding a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule.

at position 33 - as the L1 loop of M225 mAb. Consequently this hypervariable loop is used to model the L1 loop of M225 kappa light chain variable region. Similarly, CDR2 (L2) and CDR3 (L3) of the M225 mAb both match their respective canonical group 1 loop structures. In addition, the corresponding hypervariable loop structures of the
5 HyHel-10 Fab fragment are also both group 1. Accordingly, the L2 and L3 loops of the M225 kappa light chain variable region are modelled on L2 and L3 of Fab HyHel-10.

Likewise, CDR1 (H1) and CDR 2 (H2) hypervariable loops of the heavy chain variable region of mAb M225 both fit their respective canonical group 1 loop structures as defined by Chothia *et al.* (14). Moreover, the corresponding H1 and H2 hypervariable
10 loops of mouse D1.3 Fab fragment also match their respective canonical group 1 loop structures. Consequently, as with the light chain, these hypervariable loops are modelled on the H1 and H2 loops of the heavy variable region upon which the model is based. To identify a matching loop structure to the CDR3 (H3) hypervariable loop of the heavy chain variable region of M225 the Brookhaven database is searched for a loop of identical
15 length and similar amino acid sequence. This analysis found that the H3 loop of the mouse Fab 26/9 (21) exhibited the closest match to the H3 loop of M225 mAb and is consequently used as the basis for this hypervariable loop in the mouse M225 variable region model. After adjusting the whole of the model for obvious steric clashes it is finally subjected to energy minimization, as implemented in QUANTA, both to relieve
20 unfavourable atomic contacts and to optimize van der Waals and electrostatic interactions.

Example IV-6. Design of the reshaped human H225 antibody variants.

The first step in designing the CDR-grafted variable regions of the H225 antibody is the selection of the human light and heavy chain variable regions that will serve as the
25 basis of the humanized variable regions. As an aid to this process the M225 antibody light and heavy chain variable regions are initially compared to the consensus sequences of the four subgroups of human kappa light chain variable regions and the three

subgroups of human heavy chain variable regions as defined by Kabat *et al.* (20). The mouse M225 light chain variable region is most similar to the consensus sequences of both human kappa light chain subgroup I, with a 61.68% identity overall and a 65.00% identity with the FRs only, and subgroup III, with a 61.68% identity overall and a 68.75% identity with the FRs only. The mouse M225 heavy chain variable region is most similar to the consensus sequence for human heavy chain subgroup II with a 52.10% identity overall and a 57.47% identity between the FRs alone. This analysis is used to indicate which subgroups of human variable regions are likely to serve as good sources for human variable regions to serve as templates for CDR-grafting, however, this is not always the case due to the diversity of individual sequences seen within some of these artificially constructed subgroups.

For this reason the mouse M225 variable regions are also compared to all the recorded examples of individual sequences of human variable regions publically available. With respect to human antibody sequences, the mouse M225 light chain variable region is most similar to the sequence for the human kappa light chain variable region from human antibody LS7'CL (22) - which is not related to the mouse L7'CL sequence. The kappa light chain variable region of human LS7'CL is a member of subgroup III of human kappa light chain variable regions. The overall sequence identity between the mouse M225 and human LS7'CL light chain variable regions is calculated to be 64.42% overall and 71.25% with respect to the FRs alone. The mouse M225 heavy chain variable region is most similar to the sequence for the human heavy chain variable region from human antibody 38P1'CL (23). Surprisingly, the heavy chain variable region of human 38P1'CL is a member of subgroup III and not subgroup II of the human heavy chain variable regions. The overall sequence identity between the mouse M225 and human 38P1'CL heavy chain variable regions is calculated to be 48.74% while the identity between the FRs alone is 58.62%. Based on these comparisons, human LS7'CL light chain variable region is selected as the human FR donor template for the design of reshaped human M225 light chain variable region and human 38P1'CL heavy chain

variable region is selected as the human FR donor template for the design of reshaped human M225 heavy chain variable region.

As is commonly seen, the human light and heavy chain variable regions that are selected for the humanization of the M225 antibody are derived from two different human antibodies. Such a selection process allows the use of human variable regions which display the highest possible degree of similarity to the M225 variable regions. In addition, there are many successful examples of CDR-grafted antibodies based on variable regions derived from two different human antibodies. One of the best studied examples is reshaped human CAMPATH-1 antibody (24). Nevertheless, such a strategy also requires a careful analysis of the interdomain packing residues between the kappa light chain and heavy chain variable regions. Any mis-packing in this region can have a dramatic affect upon antigen binding, irrespective of the conformation of the CDR loop structures of the reshaped human antibody. Consequently, the amino acids located at the V_K/V_H interface, as defined by Chothia *et al.* (25), are checked for unusual or rare residues. Any residues so identified are then considered for mutagenesis to an amino acid more commonly seen at the specific residue position under investigation.

The second step in the design process is to insert the M225 CDRs, as defined by Kabat *et al.* (20), into the selected human light and heavy chain variable region FRs to create a simple CDR-graft. It is usual that a mouse antibody that is humanized by a simple CDR-graft in this way, will show little or no binding to antigen. Consequently, it is important to study the amino acid sequences of the human FRs to determine if any of these amino acid residues are likely to adversely influence binding to antigen, either directly through interactions with antigen, or indirectly by altering the positioning of the CDR loops.

This is the third step of the design process where decisions are made as to which amino acids in the human donor FRs should be changed to their corresponding mouse M225 residues in order to achieve good binding to antigen. This is a difficult and critical

step in the humanization procedure and it is at this stage that the model of the M225 variable regions becomes most useful to the design process. In conjunction with the model the following points are now addressed.

It is of great importance that the canonical structures for the hypervariable loops (13-16) are conserved. It is therefore crucial to conserve in the humanized H225 variable regions any of the mouse FR residues that are part of these canonical structures. It is also helpful to compare the sequence of the M225 antibody to similar sequences from other mouse antibodies to determine if any of the amino acids are unusual or rare as this may indicate that the mouse residue has an important role in antigen binding. By studying the model of the M225 variable regions, it is then possible to make a prediction as to whether any of these amino acids, or any other residues at particular positions, could or could not influence antigen binding. Comparing the individual human donor sequences for the kappa light and heavy chain variable regions to the consensus sequence of human variable regions subgroups to which the donor sequences belong, and identifying amino acids that are particularly unusual is also important. By following this design process a number of amino acids in the human FRs are identified that should be changed from the amino acid present at that position in the human variable region to the amino acid present at that position in the Mouse M225 variable region.

Table 8 describes how the first version (225RK_A) of the reshaped human H225 kappa light chain variable regions is designed. There is only one residue in the reshaped human FRs where it is considered necessary to change the amino acid present in the human FRs to the amino acid present in the original mouse FRs. This change is at position 49 in FR2, as defined by Kabat *et al.* (20). The tyrosine found in human LS7'CL kappa light chain variable region is changed to a lysine, as found in mouse M225 kappa light chain variable region. From the model it appears that the lysine in M225 is located close to CDR3 (H3) of the heavy chain variable region and may be interacting with it. The residue is also positioned adjacent to CDR2 (L2) of the kappa light chain variable region and is rarely seen at this location amongst the members of mouse kappa light chain subgroup V, as

defined by Kabat *et al.* (20), to which the M225 kappa light chain variable region belongs. For these reasons it is felt prudent to conserve the mouse lysine residue in 225RK_A.

5 A second version is also made of the reshaped human kappa light chain (225RK_B) which reverses the FR2 modification made in 225RK_A, by replacing the lysine at position 49 with the original human tyrosine amino acid. Consequently, this version of the reshaped human kappa light chain will contain no mouse residues in the FRs whatsoever.

With respect to the design of reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region, Table 9 shows the first version (225RH_A). In all there are eight residues in the reshaped
10 human FRs where it is considered necessary to change the amino acid present in the human 38P1'CL FRs to the amino acids present in the original mouse M225 FRs (i.e. A24V, T28S, F29L, S30T, V48L, S49G, F67L and R71K). At positions 24, 28, 29 and 30 in FR1 the amino acid residues as present in the mouse sequence are retained in the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region because they represent some of the
15 canonical residues important for the H1 hypervariable loop structure (14). Since canonical residues are so critical for the correct orientation and structure of hypervariable loops that they are generally always conserved in the reshaped variable region. Moreover, residue positions 24-30 are considered part of the H1 hypervariable loop itself and so are even more critical to the correct conformation and orientation of this loop and justifying
20 their conservation even more strongly. Similarly, residue position 71 in FR3 is another position in the heavy chain variable region which has been identified by Chothia *et al.* (14) as one of the locations important for the correct orientation and structure of the H2 hypervariable loop and, as such, is one of the canonical amino acids of CDR2. Consequently, the lysine in the mouse will replace the arginine in the human at this
25 residue position. At positions 48 and 49 in FR2 and 67 in FR3, the valine, serine and phenylalanine residues (respectively) present in the human 38P1'CL V_H sequence are changed to leucine, glycine and leucine (respectively) as present in the mouse M225 V_H sequence. This decision is made on the basis of the model which shows that all three

residues are buried underneath the H2 loop and so could influence the conformation of the hypervariable loop and hence interfere with antigen binding. These are then the mouse residues conserved in the first version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region.

5 Version B of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_B) incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, contains a further mouse residue. At position 41 in FR2 the human threonine residue is replaced by proline which is invariably seen at this position in the mouse subgroup IB and is also very commonly seen in human subgroup III. In contrast, threonine is not usually seen at this
10 location in the human subgroup III (only $11/27$ times) and from the model it appears that the residue is located on a turn located on the surface of the M225 V_H region. What effect this may have on hypervariable loop structures is unclear, however, this version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region should clarify this.

 Version C of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_C)
15 incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, contains a further two mouse residues located at position 68 and 70 in FR3. From the model of the mouse M225 variable region, both the serine at position 68 and the asparagine at position 70 appear to be on the surface and at the edge of the antigen binding site. Since there is a possibility that either or both amino acids could directly interact with EGFR, both the threonine at
20 position 68 and the serine at position 70 in the human FRs are replaced with the corresponding mouse residues in 225RH_C.

 Version D of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_D) simply incorporates all the mouse FR substitutions made in 225RH_A, 225RH_B and 225RH_C to determine the combined effect of these changes.

25 Version E of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_E) incorporates all the substitutions made in 225RH_A and, in addition, incorporates another

residue change at position 78 in FR3. From the model there is some evidence to suggest that the mouse amino acid (valine) at position 78 could influence the conformation of the H1 hypervariable loops from its location buried underneath CDR1. Consequently, the human residue (leucine) is replaced by the mouse amino acid in 225RH_E.

5 Example IV-7. Construction of the humanized antibody variable region genes

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 V_K region (225RK_A) is carried out essentially as described by Sato *et al.* (26). In essence, this involves annealing PCR-primers encoding FR modifications (Table 10) onto a DNA template of the chimeric C225V_K gene using the two step PCR-amplification protocol to
10 synthesize the reshaped human variable region gene. As a consequence, the FR DNA sequence of the chimeric C225V_K is modified by the primers to that of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_A. The newly synthesized reshaped variable region gene, following column purification, is digested with *Hind*III and *Xba*I, agarose gel-purified and subcloned into pUC19 (digested and agarose gel-purified in an
15 identical manner). The new plasmid construct, pUC-225RK_A, is then transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive clones are identified by PCR-screening (using primers RSP and UP) and then finally ds-DNA sequenced, both to confirm their integrity and discount the presence of PCR-errors. From the confirmed positive clones an individual clone is selected and directly inserted, as a *Hind*III-*Xba*I fragment, into the
20 human kappa light chain mammalian expression vector (pKN100) to create the plasmid pKN100-225RK_A. The integrity of this vector construct is confirmed via PCR-screening (using primers HCMVi and New.Hux) and restriction digest analysis.

Version B of the reshaped human H225 V_K (225RK_B) is constructed using oligonucleotide primers 225RK_B.K49Y and APCR40 (Table 11). A 100 µl PCR-reaction
25 mix comprising 65.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 µl of 2 ng/µl plasmid pUC-225RK_A template DNA, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of primers

225RK_B.K49Y and APCR40 and 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase is overlaid with 50 µl of mineral oil and loaded into a DNA thermal cycler. The PCR-reaction is PCR-amplified, using the two step protocol over 25 cycles, and the PCR-product column purified before it is cut with *MscI*. Plasmid pUC-225RK_A is also cut with *MscI* and both
5 the digested PCR product and the plasmid fragment are agarose gel-purified. The PCR-product is then cloned into pUC-225RK_A, to create pUC-225RK_B, before being transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformant are first identified, using primers 225RK_B.K49Y and UP in a PCR-screening assay, and then confirmed via ds-DNA sequencing. A selected individual clone is finally subcloned into
10 pKN100 to produce the plasmid pKN100-225RK_B, whose correct construction is confirmed both by using primers HCMVi and New.Huk (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and restriction analysis.

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 V_H region (225RH_A) is also carried out essentially as described by Sato *et al.* (26). In the case of
15 the reshaped human 225RH_A gene this involves annealing PCR-primers (Table 12) onto both a DNA template of a previously humanized mAb, to create the 5'-half of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene, and the chimeric C225V_H gene, to synthesize the 3'-half of the reshaped human kappa light chain variable region gene. Again, the two step PCR-amplification protocol is used and the reshaped variable region
20 gene created is cloned into pUC19 vector, as an agarose gel-purified *HindIII-BamHI* fragment, to create plasmid pUC-225RH_A. Putative positive clones identified by PCR-screening (using primers RSP and UP) are finally ds-DNA sequenced both to confirm the DNA sequence and prove the absence of PCR-errors. From the confirmed positive clones an individual clone is selected and directly inserted, as a *HindIII-BamHI* fragment, into
25 the human γ1 heavy chain mammalian expression vector pG1D105 to create plasmid pG1D105-225RH_A. The construction of this plasmid is then confirmed both by using primers HCMVi and γAS (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and restriction analysis.

Versions B of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_B) is synthesized in a two step PCR-mutagenesis procedure in the following manner. Two separate 100 µl PCR-reaction mixes are first prepared by combining 65.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 µl of 2 ng/µl plasmid pUC-225RH_A template DNA, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of primers APCR10 and 225RH_B.T41P-AS in the first PCR-reaction, and primers APCR40 and 225RH_B.T41P-S in the second PCR-reaction (Table 13), and finally 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. Each of the two PCR-reaction mixes are overlayed with 50 µl of mineral oil, loaded into a DNA thermal
5 10
cycler and PCR-amplified using the two step protocol over 25 cycles. The two PCR-products are then agarose gel-purified, to separate them from any template DNA remaining in the PCR-reaction, before being resuspended in 50µl of distilled/deionized water and their concentration determined.

In a second PCR-reaction 20pmol aliquots of each of the two PCR-products from the first PCR-reaction (equivalent to 8 µl of the APCR10/225RH_B.T41P-AS PCR product and 10 µl of the APCR40/225RH_B.T41P-S PCR-product) are added to 57.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs and 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. This PCR-reaction is overlayed with mineral oil and
15 20
PCR-amplified using the two step protocol over 7 cycles only. A third PCR-reaction is then prepared comprising 1 µl of the product of the second PCR-reaction 69.5 µl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 10 µl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 µl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 µl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 µl aliquots (each of 10 µM) of the nested primers RSP and UP and 0.5 µl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. The
25
PCR-reaction is overlayed with mineral oil and amplified using the two step protocol for a final 25 cycles. This PCR-product is then column purified, isolated as an agarose gel purified *Hind*III-*Bam*HI fragment, subcloned into *Hind*III-*Bam*HI digested and agarose gel -purified plasmid pUC19, and finally transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformants are first identified and then confirmed

as described previously. A selected individual clone is then subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the plasmid pG1D105-225RH_B - which is confirmed using primers HCMVi and γAS (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and by restriction analysis.

Version C of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_C) is synthesized in a similar manner to 225RK_C. A 100 μl PCR-reaction mix containing 65.5 μl of sterile distilled/deionized water, 5 μl of 2 ng/μl plasmid pUC-225RH_A template DNA, 10 μl of 10 X PCR buffer II, 6 μl of 25 mM MgCl₂, 2 μl each of the 10 mM stock solutions of dNTPs, 2.5 μl aliquots (each of 10 M) of primers APCR40 and 225RH_C.T68S/S70N (Table 13) and 0.5 μl of AmpliTaq®DNA polymerase. The PCR-reaction is overlaid with mineral oil PCR-amplified, using the two step protocol over 25 cycles, and column purified prior to digestion with *Sa*I and *Bam*HI. Plasmid pUC-225RH_A is also cut with with *Sa*I and *Bam*HI and both the digested PCR product and the plasmid are agarose gel-purified. The PCR-product is then cloned into pUC-225RH_A, to create pUC-225RH_C, before being transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformant are first identified, using primers RSP and UP in a PCR-screening assay, and later confirmed via ds-DNA sequencing. A selected individual clone is then subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the plasmid pG1D105-225RH_C. The correct construction of this vector finally proven both by using primers HCMVi and γAS (Table 6) in a PCR-screening assay and restriction analysis.

Version D of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_D) is a product of the changes incorporated into versions B and C of the reshaped human heavy chain of H225 antibody. Fortuitously, it is possible to amalgamate the changes made to these heavy chain variable region genes by digesting both pUC-225RH_B and pUC-225RH_C with *Sa*I and *Bam*HI. The 2.95 kb vector fragment from pUC-225RH_B and the approximately 180 bp insert fragment from pUC-225RH_C are then agarose gel-purified before being ligated together and transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Positive transformant are identified and ds-DNA sequenced before a selected

individual clone is subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the plasmid pG1D105-225RH_D. The correct construction of this vector is finally confirmed as described previously.

5 Version E of the reshaped human H225 V_H (225RH_E) is a derivative of 225RH_A and is synthesized in an identical manner to 225RH_C using primers APCR40 and 225RH_E.L78V (Table 13). A selected 225RH_E clone from plasmid pUC-225RH_E is then subcloned into pG1D105 to produce the vector pG1D105-225RH_E - the correct construction of which is proven in the usual manner.

Example IV-8. Transfection of DNA into COS cells

10 The method of Kettleborough *et al.* (11) is followed to transfect the mammalian expression vectors into COS cells.

Example IV-9. Protein A purification of recombinant 225 antibodies

15 Both the chimeric C225 antibody and the various reshaped human H225 antibody constructs are protein A purified according to the protocol described in Kolbinger *et al.* (27).

Example IV-10. Mouse Antibody ELISA

20 Each well of a 96-well Nunc-Immuno Plate MaxiSorp™ immunoplate is first coated with 100 μl aliquots of 0.5 ng/μl goat anti-mouse IgG (γ-chain specific) antibody, diluted in coating buffer (0.05 M Carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6), and incubated overnight at 4 °C. The wells are blocked with 200 μl/well of mouse blocking buffer (2.5% (w/v) E₁ in PBS) for 1 hr at 37 °C before being washed with 200 μl/well aliquots of wash buffer (PBS / 0.05% (v/v) tween-20) three times. 100 μl/well aliquots of the experimental samples (i.e. harvested media from the M225

hybridoma cell line - spun to remove cell debris) and 1:2 sample dilutions, diluted in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.0), 0.1 M NaCl, 0.02% (v/v) tween-20 and 0.2% (w/v) BSA), are now dispensed onto the immunoplate. In addition, a purified mouse IgG standard, serially diluted 1:2 from a starting concentration of 1000 ng/ml, is also loaded onto the immunoplate. The immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr and washed three times with 200 µl/well of wash buffer. 100 µl of goat anti-mouse IgG/horseradish peroxidase conjugate, diluted 1000-fold in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer, is now added to each well, following which the immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before it is washed as before. 100 µl aliquots of TMB peroxidase substrate A:peroxidase substrate B (1:1) are now added to each well and incubated for 10 min at RT in the dark. The reaction is halted by dispensing 50 µl of 1 N H₂SO₄ into each well. The optical density at 450 nm is finally determined using a Bio-Rad 3550 microplate reader in conjunction with Microplate Manager™.

15 Example IV-11. Quantification of whole human γ1/κ antibody via ELISA

Each well of a 96-well Nunc-Immuno Plate MaxiSorp™ immunoplate is first coated with 100 µl aliquots of 0.4 ng/µl goat anti-human IgG (Fcγ fragment specific) antibody, diluted in coating buffer (0.05 M Carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6), and incubated overnight at 4 °C. The wells are then each blocked with 200 µl of human blocking buffer (2% (w/v) BSA in PBS) for 2 hr at RT before being washed with 200 µl/well aliquots of wash buffer (PBS / 0.05% (v/v) tween-20) three times. 100 µl/well aliquots of the experimental samples (i.e. harvested COS cell supernatants - spun to remove cell debris) and 1:2 sample dilutions, diluted in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.0), 0.1 M NaCl, 0.02% (v/v) tween-20 and 0.2% (w/v) BSA), are now dispensed onto the immunoplate. In addition, a purified human γ1/κ antibody, which is used as a standard and serially diluted 1:2, is also loaded onto the immunoplate. The immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before being washed with 200 µl/well of wash buffer three times. 100 µl of goat anti-human

kappa light chain/horseradish peroxidase conjugate, diluted 5000-fold in sample-enzyme conjugate buffer, is added to each well, following which the immunoplate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before it is washed as before. The remainder of the protocol is identical to the mouse antibody ELISA.

5 Example IV-12. A431 Cell ELISA for the detection of EGFR antigen binding

The procedure is based upon the one provided by ImClone Systems Inc. to determine the relative binding affinity of the recombinant 225 antibody constructs, to EGFR expressed on the surface of A431 cells. The A431 cells are plated onto a 96-well flat bottomed tissue culture plate and incubated overnight in DMEM media with
10 10% (v/v) FBS at 37 °C and 5% CO₂. The following day the media is removed, the cells are washed once in PBS and then fixed with 100 µl/well of 0.25% (v/v) gluteraldehyde in PBS. This is removed and the plate is washed again in PBS before it is blocked with 200 µl/well of 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS for 2 hr at 37 °C. The blocking solution is removed and 100 µl/well aliquots of the experimental samples (i.e.
15 harvested COS cell supernatants - spun to remove cell debris) and 1:2 sample dilutions thereof (diluted in 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS) are dispensed onto the tissue culture plate. In addition, 80 µl/well aliquots of purified human γ1/κ antibody, which is used as a standard and serially diluted 1:5 from a starting concentration of 20 µg/ml, is also loaded onto the plate. The plate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr and then washed with
20 200 µl/well of 0.5% (v/v) tween-20 in PBS, three times. 100 µl of goat anti-human IgG (H+L)/horseradish peroxidase conjugate, diluted 5000-fold in 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS, is now added to each well, following which the plate is incubated at 37 °C for 1 hr before being washed first with 200 µl/well of 0.5% (v/v) tween-20 in PBS (three times) and then distilled deionized water (twice). The remainder of the protocol is
25 identical to the mouse antibody ELISA.

Example IV-13. Cloning and sequencing of the variable regions of the M225 antibody

The presence of mouse antibody in the media from the M225 hybridoma cells at the point of harvesting the cells for RNA purification was proven using the mouse antibody ELISA. Following 1st strand synthesis the single stranded cDNA template was PCR-amplified with two series of degenerate primers, one series specific for the kappa light chain signal peptide/variable region genes (Table 4) and the second series specific for the heavy chain signal peptide/variable region genes (Table 5). Using these primers both the V_K gene and the V_H gene of the M225 antibody were successfully PCR-cloned from the M225 hybridoma cell line.

The M225 kappa light chain variable region gene was PCR-cloned, as an approximately 416bp fragment, using primers MKV4 (which annealed to the 5' end of the DNA sequence of the kappa light chain signal peptide) and MKC (designed to anneal to the 5' end of the mouse kappa constant region gene). Likewise the M225 heavy chain variable region gene was PCR-cloned, as an approximately 446bp fragment, using the MHV6 (which annealed to the 5' end of the DNA sequence of the heavy chain signal peptide) and MHCG1 (designed to anneal to the 5' end of the CH₁ domain of the mouse γ 1 heavy chain gene) primers.

To minimize the possibility of introducing errors into the wild-type sequences of the mouse M225 variable region genes, either caused by AmpliTaq® DNA polymerase itself or changes introduced by reverse transcriptase (which has an error frequency approximately $1/10$ that of AmpliTaq®), a strict protocol was followed. At least two separate PCR-products, each from a different total RNA preparation and subsequent 1st strand cDNA synthesis reaction, were PCR-cloned and then completely DNA sequenced on both DNA strands for both the kappa light chain and heavy chain variable region genes of M225 mAb.

From DNA sequence analysis of several individual clones from each of these PCR-reactions the mouse M225 antibody V_K and V_H genes were determined as shown in Figures 13 and 14, respectively. The amino acid sequences of the M225 V_K and V_H regions were compared with other mouse variable regions and also the consensus sequences of the subgroups that the variable regions were subdivided into in the Kabat database (20). From this analysis the M225 V_K region was found to most closely match the consensus sequence of mouse kappa subgroup V, with an identity of 62.62% and a similarity of 76.64% to the subgroup. However, the kappa light chain variable region also displayed a close match to mouse kappa subgroup III with a 61.68% identity and a 76.64% similarity to its consensus sequence. When only the FRs of the M225 kappa light chain variable region (i.e. without the amino acids in the CDRs) were compared to mouse subgroups III and V the identity increased to 66.25% for both subgroups while the similarity rose to 78.75% for subgroup III and to exactly 80.00% for subgroup V. Similar analysis of the M225 V_H region found that it exhibited the closest match to the consensus sequence of mouse heavy chain subgroup IB in the Kabat database (20). Identity between the mouse heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of M225 and the consensus sequence of subgroup IB was measured at 78.15% while the similarity was calculated to be 84.87%, with no other consensus sequence coming even remotely near these values. These results confirm that the mouse M225 variable regions appear to be typical of mouse variable regions.

Example IV-14. Construction and expression of chimeric C225 antibody

The PCR-products from the two PCR-reactions prepared to construct the C225 V_K and V_H genes were separately subcloned into pUC19 as *HindIII-BamHI* fragments and then PCR-screened to identify putative positive transformants. Those transformants so identified were then ds-DNA sequenced, to confirm their synthesis, and then subcloned into their respective mammalian expression vectors. The DNA and amino acid sequences of the chimeric C225 kappa light chain and heavy chain variable

regions are shown in Figures 15 and 16, respectively. Once the integrity of the expression vectors had also been confirmed, by PCR-screening and restriction analysis to confirm the presence of the correct insert, the vectors were co-transfected into COS cells. After 72 hr incubation, the medium was collected, spun to remove cell debris and analysed by ELISA for antibody production and binding to EGFR. Unfortunately, no chimeric antibody could be detected in the supernatant of the COS cell co-transfections.

An analysis of the leader sequence of C225V_K established that it was unusual, compared to the leader sequences of other kappa light chain variable regions in mouse kappa light chain subgroups III and V (20). To try and find a more suitable leader sequence, the Kabat database was analysed to identify an individual kappa light chain which both matched C225V_K amino acid sequence and whose signal peptide sequence was known. This search identified the kappa light chain of mouse antibody L7'CL (28) which exhibited a 94.79% identity and a 94.79% similarity to the C225V_K region and a perfect match with respect to FR1, which play an important role in the excision of the signal peptide during secretion. The amino acid sequence of the L7'CL kappa light chain signal peptide (i.e. MVSTPQFLVFLFWIPASRG (SEQ ID NO: 36)) displays all the characteristics thought important in a such a signal sequence - such as a hydrophobic core - and so it was decided to replace the signal peptide of the PCR-cloned 225V_K with this new sequence. Another point of interest was that the differences between the M225V_K and the L7'CL signal peptides nearly all occurred at its 5'-end where the MKV4 primer annealed (i.e. the first 33 bases which is equivalent to the first 11 amino acids of the signal peptide) when the M225V_K gene was originally PCR-cloned. Thus, these differences could well be primer induced errors in the DNA sequence of the signal peptide. PCR-mutagenesis of the C225V_K template produced an approximately 390bp product. The *HindIII*-*PstI* digested and purified fragment was then subcloned into identically digested and agarose gel-purified plasmid pUC-C225V_K and transformed into XL1Blue competent cells. Putative positive transformants were identified and then ds-DNA sequenced. The C225V_Ksp

gene (Figure 17) was subcloned into pKN100 and the resulting expression vector (pKN100-C225V_{Ksp}) PCR-screened and restriction digested to confirm the presence of the correct insert. This vector was finally co-transfected into COS cells with pG1D105-C225V_H and after 72 hr incubation, the medium was collected, spun to remove cell debris and analysed by ELISA for antibody production and binding to EGFR. This time chimeric C225 antibody was detected in the supernatant of the COS cell co-transfections at an approximate concentration of 150 ng/ml and this antibody bound to EGFR in the cell ELISA. Figure 18 shows a typical example of one such experiment.

10 Example IV-15. Construction and expression of the reshaped H225 antibody (225RK_A/225RH_A)

The construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A) produced an approximately 416bp product that was then subcloned into pUC19 as a *Hind*II-*Bam*HI fragment. Putative positive transformants were identified using the PCR-screening assay and then ds-DNA sequenced. The 225RK_A gene (Figure 19) was subcloned into pKN100 and the resulting expression vector (pKN100-225RK_A) PCR-screened and restriction digested to confirm the presence of the correct insert. Likewise, the construction of the first version of the reshaped human H225 heavy chain variable region (225RH_A) produced an approximately 446bp product which was then subcloned into pUC19 as a *Hind*II-*Bam*HI fragment. Putative positive transformants were again identified in the PCR-screen and then ds-DNA sequenced. The 225RH_A gene (Figure 20) was subcloned into pG1D105 and the resulting expression vector (pG1D105-225RH_A) PCR-screened and restriction digested to confirm the presence of the correct insert.

25 These vectors were then co-transfected together into COS cells and after 72 hr incubation, the medium was collected, spun to remove cell debris and analysed by ELISA for antibody production and binding to EGFR. The concentration of reshaped

human antibody in the COS cell supernatants was slightly higher than those following transient expression of the C225 chimeric antibody (approximately 200 ng/ml). In addition, a significant level of binding to EGFR was shown in the cell ELISA. Figure 8 shows a typical example of one such experiment which appears to show that the

5 reshaped human H225 antibody (225RK_A/225RH_A) bound to EGFR expressed on the surface of A431 cells with about 65% of the relative affinity of the chimeric C225 antibody.

The amino acid sequences of the two versions of the kappa light chain reshaped human H225 variable regions constructed are shown in Figure 21, while the amino

10 acid sequences of the five versions of the heavy chain reshaped human H225 variable regions constructed are shown in Figure 22.

Example IV-16. References

1. Mendelsohn, J. (1988). In: Waldmann, H. (ed). *Monoclonal antibody therapy*. Prog. Allergy Karger, Basel, p147.
2. Aboud-Pirak, E., Hurwitz, E., Pirak, M.E., Bellot, F., Schlessinger, J., and Sela, M. (1988). *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* **80**:1605.
3. Masui, H., Kawamoto, T., Sato, J.D., Wolf, B., Sato, G., and Mendelsohn, J. (1984). *Cancer Research* **44**:1002.
4. Mueller, B.M., Romerdahl, C.A., Trent, J.M., and Reisfeld, R.A. (1991). *Cancer Research* **51**:2193.
5. Rodeck, U., Herlyn, M., Herlyn, D., Molthoff, C., Atkinson, B., Varello, M., Steplewski, Z., and Koprowski, H. (1987). *Cancer Research* **47**:3692.
6. Chomczynski, P., and Sacchi, N. (1987). *Anal. Biochem.* **162**:156.
7. Jones, S.T., and Bendig, M.M. (1991). *Bio/Technology* **9**:88.
8. Güssow, D., and Clackson, T. (1989). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **17**:4000.
9. Redston, M.S., and Kern, S.E. (1994). *Biotechniques* **17**:286.
10. Kozak, M. (1987). *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:947.
11. Kettleborough, C.A., Saldanha, J., Heath, V.J., Morrison, C.J., and Bendig, M.M. (1991). *Protein Eng.* **4**:773.
12. Bernstein, F.C., Koetzle, T.F., Williams, G.J., Meyer, E.F., Brice, M.D., Todgers, J.R., Kennard, O., Shimanouchi, T. and Tasumi, M. (1977). *J. Mol. Biol.* **112**:535.
13. Chothia, C., and Lesk, A.M. (1987). *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:901.
14. Chothia, C., Lesk, A.M., Tramontano, A., Levitt, M., Smith-Gill, S.J., Air, G., Sheriff, S., Padlan, E.A., Davies, A., Tulip, W.R., Colman, P.M., Spinelli, S., Alzari, P.M., and Poljak, R.J. (1989). *Nature* **34**:877.
15. Tramontano, A., Chothia, C., and Lesk, A.M. (1990). *J. Mol. Biol.* **215**:175.
16. Chothia, C., Lesk, A.M., Gherardi, E., Tomlinson, I.M., Walter, G., Marks, J.D., Llewelyn, M.B., and Winter, G. (1992). *J. Mol. Biol.* **227**:799.

17. Brooks, B.R., Bruccoleri, R.E., Olafson, B.D., States, D.J., Swaminathan, S., and Karplus, M. (1983). *J. Comp. Chem.* **4**:187.
18. Padlan, E.A., Silverton, E.W., Sheriff, S., Cohen, G.H., Smith-Gill, S.J., and Davies, D.R. (1989). *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:5938.
- 5 19. Fischmann, T.O., Bentley, G.A., Bhat, T.N., Boulot, G., Mariuzza, R.A., Phillips, S.E.V., Tello, D. and Poljak, R.J. (1991) *J.Biol.Chem.* **266**:12915.
20. Kabat, E.A., Wu, T.T., Perry, H.M., Gottesman, K.S., and Foeller, C. (1991). *Sequences of proteins of immunological interest*, Fifth Edition, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, U.S. Government Printing Office.
- 10 21. Schulze-Gahmen, U., Rini, J.M., and Wilson, I.A. (1993). *J.Mol.Biol.* **234**:1098.
22. Silberstein, L.E., Litwin, S., and Carmack, C.E. (1989). *J. Exp. Med.* **169**: 1631.
23. Schroeder Jr., H.W., Hillson, J.L., and Perlmutter, R.M. (1987). *Science* **238**:791.
24. Riechmann, L., Clark, M., Waldmann, H., and Winter, G. (1988). *Nature* **322**:21.
25. Chothia, C., Novotny, J., Bruccoleri, R., and Karplus, M. (1985). *J. Mol. Biol.*
15 **186**:651.
26. Sato, K., Tsuchiya, M., Saldanha, J., Koishihara, Y., Ohsugi, Y., Kishimoto, T., and Bendig, M.M. (1993). *Cancer Research* **53**:851.
27. Kolbinger, F., Saldanha, J., Hardman, N., and Bendig, M.M. (1993). *Protein Eng.*
6:971.
- 20 28. Pech, M., Hochtl, J., Schnell, H., and Zachau, H.G. (1981). *Nature* **291**:668.

Example IV-17. Tables

Table 4. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 kappa light chain variable region genes.

5 Table 5. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 heavy chain variable region genes.

Table 6. Primers for PCR screening transformed colonies

Table 7. Primers for constructing chimeric C225 antibody kappa light chain and heavy chain variable region genes and also for modifying the signal peptide sequence of the C225 antibody kappa light chain.

10 Table 8. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A).

Table 9. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody heavy chain variable region (225RH_A).

15 Table 10. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_A.

Table 11. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_B.

20 Table 12. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region gene 225RH_A.

Table 13. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region genes 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D and 225RH_E.

Table 4. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 kappa light chain variable region genes.

Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
MKV1 ^a (30mer)	ATGAAGTTGCCTGTTAGGCTGTTGGTGCTG
5 MKV2 (30mer)	ATGGAGACAGACACACTCCTGCTATGGGTG T T
MKV3 (30mer)	ATGAGTGTGCTCACTCAGGTCCTGGCGTTG G
MKV4 (33mer)	ATGAGGGCCCCCTGCTCAGTTTTTTGGCTTCTTG A A C AA
MKV5 (30mer)	ATGGATTTTTCAGGTGCAGATTATCAGCTTC A T
MKV6 (27mer)	ATGAGGTGCCCTGTTTCAGTTCCTGGGG T TT C G C T A
10 MKV7 (31mer)	ATGGGCATCAAGATGGAGTCACAGACCCAGG T TTTT T
MKV8 (31mer)	ATGTGGGGACCTTTTTTCCCTTTTTCAATTG T G C AA
MKV9 (25mer)	ATGGTATCCACACCTCAGTTCCTTG G T G
MKV10 (27mer)	ATGTATATATGTTTGTTGTCTATTTCT
MKV11 (28mer)	ATGGAAGCCCCAGCTCAGCTTCTCTTCC
15 MKC ^b (20mer)	ACTGGATGGTGGGAAGATGG

^a MKV indicates primers that hybridize to leader sequences of mouse kappa light chain variable region genes.

^b MKC indicates the primer that hybridizes to the mouse kappa constant region gene.

Table 5. Degenerate and specific PCR-primers used in the cloning of the M225 heavy chain variable region genes.

	Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
	MHV1 ^a (27mer)	ATGAAATGCAGCTGGGGCATCTTCTTC G
5	MHV2 (26mer)	ATGGGATGGAGCTGTATCATGTTCTT A CC
	MHV3 (27mer)	ATGAAGTTGTGGTTAAACTGGGTTTTT A
	MHV4 (25mer)	ATGAACTTTGGGCTCAGCTTGATTT G T G
	MHV5 (30mer)	ATGGACTCCAGGCTCAATTTAGTTTTCTT
	MHV6 (27mer)	ATGGCTGTCCTAGGGCTACTCTTCTGC T G C G
10	MHV7 (26mer)	ATGGGATGGAGCGGGATCTTTCTCTT A T G A
	MHV8 (23mer)	ATGAGAGTGCTGATTCTTTTG TG
	MHV9 (30mer)	ATGGATTGGGTGTGGACCTTGCTATTCCTG C A
	MHV10 (27mer)	ATGGGCAGACTTACATTCTCATTCCTG
	MHV11 (28mer)	ATGGATTTTGGGCTGATTTTTTTTATTG
15	MHV12 (27mer)	ATGATGGTGTTAAGTCTTCTGTACCTG
	MHCG1 ^b (21mer)	CAGTGGATAGACAGATGGGGG

^a MHV indicates primers that hybridize to leader sequences of mouse heavy chain variable region genes.

^b MHCG indicates primers that hybridize to mouse constant region genes.

Table 6. Primers for PCR screening transformed colonies

	Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
	pCR TM I Forward Primer (18mer)	C T A G A T G C A T G C T C G A G C
	pCR TM II Reverse Primer(21mer)	T A C C G A G C T C G G A T C C A C T A G
5	RSP (Reverse Sequencing Primer) (24mer)	A G C G G A T A A C A A T T T C A C A C A G G A
	UP (Universal Primer) (24mer)	C G C C A G G G T T T T C C C A G T C A C G A C
	γAS (20mer)	A C G A C A C C G T C A C C G G T T C G
	HCMVi (28mer)	G T C A C C G T C C T T G A C A C G C G T C T C G G G A
10	New.Hux (25mer)	G T T G T T T G C G C A T A A T C A C A G G G C A
	Huγ1 (17mer)	T T G G A G G A G G G T G C C A G
	225RK _B .K49Y (60mer)	C A G C A A A G A C C T G G C C A G G C T C C A A G G C T T C T C A T A T A T T A T G C T T C T G A G T C T A T C T C T

Table 7. Primers for constructing chimeric C225 antibody kappa light chain and heavy chain variable region genes and also for modifying the signal peptide sequence of the C225 antibody kappa light chain.

	Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
5	C225V _H 5' (36mer)	A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G C T G T C T T G G G G C T G C T C
	C225V _H 3' (34mer)	G G A T C C A C T C A C C T G C A G A G A C A G T G A C C A G A G T
	C225V _K 5' (36mer)	A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G T A T C C A C A C C T C A G A A C
	C225V _K 3' (40mer)	T C T A G A A G G A T C C A C T C A C G T T T C A G C T C C A G C T T G G T C C
	C225V _K 5'sp (99mer)	A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G T A T C C A C A C C T C A G T T C C T T G T A T T T T T G C T T T T C T G G A T T C C A G C C T C C A G A G G T G A C A T C T T G C T G A C T C A G T C T C C A
10	C225V _K 3'sp (21mer)	A G A G A T A G A C T C A G A A G C A T A

Table 8. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody kappa light chain variable region (225RK_λ).

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _λ	Surface or Buried	Comment
1	1	FR1	D	D	E	E	E	Surface	
2	2		I	I	I*	I	I		Canonical AA for L1 loop
3	3		L [83]	Q	V*	V [1075]	V	Surface	[1676]L=6/270 (& Linked to 10I+39R+40T+41N) in mouse κ-V. L=1/116 in human -III.
4	4		L	M	L	L	L		L=18/276 in mouse κ-V.
5	5		T	T*	T*	T	T		
6	6		Q	Q*	Q	Q	Q		
7	7		S	S	S*	S	S		
8	8		P	P	P*	P	P		
9	9		V [5]	S	G	A [466]	Δ	Surface	[1621] Val not seen in mouse κ-V. V=1/107 in human -III.
10	10		I [185]	S	T*	T [177]	I	Surface	[1396] I=4/286 (& linked to 3L+39R+40T+41N) in mouse κ-V. Ile not seen in human -III.
11	11		L	L	L*	L	L		
12	12		S	S	S*	S	S		
13	13		V [677]	A	L	L [87]	L	Surface	[1616] V=47/276 in mouse κ-V. V=17/106 in human -III.
14	14		S	S	S*	S	S		
15	15		P	L	P*	P	P		P=26/286 in mouse κ-V.
16	16		G	G*	G*	G	G		
17	17		E	D	E	E	E		E=95/276 in mouse κ-V.
18	18		R	R	R	R	R		
19	19		V	V	A	A	Δ	Buried	V=10/98 in human -III.

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7 ^o CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
20	20		S	T	T	T	I	Half-buried	S=77/299 in mouse κ-V. S=1/97 in human -III.
21	21		F [15]	I	L*	L [234]	L	Buried	[1595]F=5/301 in mouse κ-V. Phe not seen in human -III.
22	22		S	T	S*	S	S		S=116/296 in mouse κ-V.
23	23	FRI	C	C*	C*	C	C		
24	24	CDR1	R	R	R	R	R		
25	25		A	A*	A*	A	A		Canonical AA for L1 loop.
26	26		S	S*	S*	S	S		
27	27		Q	Q	Q	Q	Q		
27A			-	D	-	-	-		
27B			-	-	-	-	-		
27C			-	-	-	-	-		
27D			-	-	-	-	-		
27E			-	-	-	-	-		
27F			-	-	-	-	-		
28	28		S	D	S	S	S		
29	29		I	I	V	V	I		Canonical AA for L1 loop.
30	30		G	S	S	S	G		
31	31		T	N	S	S	T		
32	32		N	Y	Y	Y	N		
33	33		I	L	L	L	I		Canonical AA for L1 loop.
34	34	CDR1	H	N	A	A	H		Packing AA.
35	35	FR2	W	W*	W*	W	W		
36	36		Y	Y	Y*	Y	Y		Packing AA.
37	37		Q	Q*	Q	Q	Q		
38	38		Q	Q	Q	Q	Q		Packing AA.
39	39		R	K	K	R	R		R=10/252 (& linked to 3L+10I+40T+41N) in mouse κ-V.

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
40	40		T [10]	P	P*	P [1080]	P	Surface	[1301]T=5/255 (& linked to 3L+10I+39R+41N) in mouse κ-V. Thr not seen in human -III.
41	41		N [5]	G	G*	G [1009]	G	Surface	[1267]N=5/246 & linked to 3L+10I+39R+40T) in mouse κ-V. Asn not seen in human -III.
42	42		G	G	Q	Q	Q	Surface	G=1/67 in human -III.
43	43		S	S	A	A	Δ	Surface	S=2/66 in human -III.
44	44		P	P	P*	P	P		Core packing AA.
45	45		R	K	R*	R	R		R=34/250 in mouse κ-V. (Possible link to AA3, 10, 39-41).
46	46		L	L	L*	L	L		Packing AA.
47	47		L	L*	L*	L	L		
48	48		I	I	I*	I	I		Canonical AA for L2 Loop.
49	49	FR2	K [19]	Y	Y	Y [1042]	K	Buried	Close to H3 loop & may be interacting with it. (Δ1) [1234] K=13/249 (& linked to 58I) in mouse κ-V. (Possible link to AA3, 10, 39-41.). Lys not seen in human -III.
50	50	CDR2	Y	Y	G	D	Y		
51	51		A	A	A	A	A		Canonical AA for L2 loop.
52	52		S	S	S*	S	S		Canonical AA for L2 loop.
53	53		E	R	S	N	E		
54	54		S	L	R*	R	S		
55	55		I	H	A*	A	I		
56	56	CDR2	S	S	T*	T	S		
57	57	FR3	G	G*	G*	G	G		
58	58		I	V	I*	I	I		I=34/232 (& linked to 49K) in mouse κ-V. (Possible link to AA 3, 10, 39-41.)
59	59		P	P*	P*	P	P		
60	60		S	S	D	A	Δ	Surface	Ser not seen in human -III.
61	61		R	R*	R*	R	R		

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
62	62		F	F*	F*	F	F		
63	63		S	S	S*	S	S		
64	64		S	G*	G*	G	S		Canonical AA for L2 loop.
65	65		S	S*	S*	S	S		
66	66		G	G	G	G	G		
67	67		S	S*	S*	S	S		
68	68		G	G*	G*	G	G		
69	69		T	T	T*	T	T		
70	70		D	D	D	D	D		
71	71		F	Y	F*	F	F		Canonical AA for I1 loop. F=83/243 (& linked to 72T) in mouse κ-V.
72	72		T	S	T*	T	T		T=73/246 (& linked to 71F) in mouse κ-V.
73	73		L	L	L*	L	L		
74	74		S [38]	T	T*	T [837]	I	Half-buried	[1220]S=29/247 in mouse κ-V. Ser not seen in human -III.
75	75		I	I*	I*	I	I		
76	76		N [68]	S	S*	S [880]	S	Surface	[1211]N=34/242 in mouse κ-V. N=2/64 in human -III.
77	77		S	N	R	S	S		S=113/236 in mouse κ-V.
78	78		V	L	L*	L	L	Buried	V=67/245 in mouse κ-V. V=1/65 in human -III.
79	79		E	E	E	E	E		
80	80		S [94]	Q	P	P [166]	P	Surface	[1181] S=56/243 in mouse κ-V. S=8/65 in human -III.
81	81		E	E	E	E	E		
82	82		D	D*	D*	D	D		
83	83		I [98]	I	F*	F [150]	E	Surface	[1176] Ile not seen in human -III.
84	84		A	A	A*	A	A		
85	85		D	T	V*	V	V	Half-buried	D=36/243 in mouse κ-V, Asp not seen in human -III.
86	86		Y	Y*	Y*	Y	Y		
87	87		Y	F	Y*	Y	Y		Packing AA. Y=109/237 in mouse κ-V.

Table 8 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse -V	Human -III	Human donor LS7'CL	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
88	88	FR3	C	C*	C*	C	C		
89	89	CDR3	Q	Q	Q*	Q	Q		Packing AA.
90	90		Q	Q	Q*	Q	Q		Canonical AA for L3 loop.
91	91		N	G	Y	R	N		Packing AA. (Unusual AA)
92	92		N	N	G	S	N		
93	93		N	T	S	N	N		
94	94		W	L	S	W	W		
95	95		P	P	P	P	P		Canonical AA for L3 loop.
95A			-	P	P	-	-		
95B			-	-	L	-	-		
95C			-	-	T	-	-		
95D			-	-	F	-	-		
95E			-	-	G	-	-		
95F			-	-	Q	-	-		
96	96		T	R	G	L	T		Core packing AA.
97	97	CDR3	T	T*	T	T	T		Canonical AA for L3 loop.
98	98	FR4	F	F*	F*	F	F		Core packing AA.
99	99		G	G*	G*	G	G		
100	100		A	G	Q	G	<u>G</u>	surface	A=26/215 in mouse κ-V. A1a not seen in human -III.
101	101		G	G*	G*	G	G		
102	102		T	T*	T*	T	T		
103	103		K	K*	K	K	K		
104	104		L	L*	V	V	<u>V</u>	buried	L=15/56 in human -III.
105	105		E	E*	E*	E	E		
106	106		L	I	I*	I	I	buried	L=23/176 in mouse κ-V. L=1/56 in human -III.
106A			-	-	-	-	-		
107	107	FR4	K	K*	K*	K	K		

Table 8 - Continued

Comparison of AA Variable Region AA Sequences to M225	Mouse C225	Mouse κ -V	Human κ -III	Human Donor LS7''CL	225 RH _A	Comment
PERCENT IDENTITY	100.0	62.62	61.68	65.42	79.44	Comment: There are 22 amino acid mismatches in the frameworks between
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	66.25	68.75	71.25	72.50	the variable regions of the reshaped kappa light chain H225RKA and the mouse M225 kappa light chain.
PERCENT SIMILARITY	100.0	76.64	72.90	77.57	87.85	Candidate AA for further mutation include residues at positions 39-45
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	80.0	80.0	82.50	83.75	(which are unusual) and a back mutation at position 49 i.e. K49Y.

Legend: (*) invariant residues as defined either by the Kabat consensus sequences i.e. 95% or greater occurrence within Kabat subgroup (Kabat *et al.*, 1991) (in the case of columns 5 and 6) or as part of the canonical structure for the CDR loops (in the case of column 8) as defined by Chothia *et al.*, (1989); (**BOLD**) positions in Frs and CDRs where the human amino acid residue was replaced by the corresponding mouse residue (UNDERLINE) positions in Frs where the human residue differs from the analogous mouse residue number; (δ) numbering of changes in the human Frs; (mouse C225) amino acid sequence of the V_L region from chimeric C225 antibody; (mouse -V) consensus sequence of mouse kappa V_L regions from subgroup V (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (human -III) consensus sequence of human V_L regions from subgroup III (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (Human Donor LS7''CL) amino acid sequence from human LS7''CL antibody (Silberstein, L.E. *et al.*, 1989); (Surface or Buried) position of amino acid in relation to the rest of the residues in both chains of the antibody variable regions; (225RK_A) amino acid sequence of the first version of the reshaped human mAb H225 V_K region; (Core packing AA/Packing AA) amino acids located at the V_L/V_H interface as defined by Chothia *et al.* (1985); (Canonical AA) amino acids defined by Chothia and Lesk (1987), Chothia *et al.* (1989), Tramontano *et al.* (1990) and Chothia *et al.* (1992) as being important for CDR loop conformation.

Table 9. Alignment of amino acid sequences leading to the design of the first version of the reshaped human H225 antibody kappa light chain variable region (225RK_A).

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human donor 38P1	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
1	1	FR I	Q	Q*	E	E	<u>E</u>	Surface	Q=13/172 in human III.
2	2		V	V*	V	V	V		
3	3		Q	Q	Q	Q	Q		
4	4		L	L*	L*	L	L		
5	5		K [99]	K*	V	V [499]	<u>V</u>	Surface	[1446] Lys not seen in human III.
6	6		Q	E	E	E	<u>E</u>	Buried	Q=15/84 (& linked to 13Q+40S+80F+84S+85N+89I) in mouse IB. Q=0/164 in human III.
7	7		S	S*	S*	S	S		
8	8		G	G*	G*	G	G		
9	9		P	P*	G*	G	<u>G</u>	Surface	Pro not seen in human III.
10	10		G	G	G	G	G		
11	11		L	L*	L	L	L		
12	12		V	V*	V	V	V		
13	13		Q	A	Q	Q	Q		
14	14		P	P*	P*	P	P		
15	15		S	S*	G*	G	<u>G</u>	Surface	Ser not seen in human III.
16	16		Q	Q*	G	G	<u>G</u>	Surface	Gin not seen in human III.
17	17		S	S*	S*	S	S		
18	18		L	L*	L*	L	<u>L</u>		
19	19		S	S*	R	R	<u>R</u>	Surface	Ser not seen in human III.
20	20		I	I*	L	L	<u>L</u>	Buried	I=1/143 in human III.
21	21		T	T*	S*	S	<u>S</u>	Surface	Thr not seen in human III.
22	22		C	C*	C*	C	C		
23	23		T	T*	A	A	<u>A</u>	Surface	T=1/128 in human III.
24	24		V	V*	A	A	V	Buried	Canonical AA for H1 loop. V=9/132 in human III. (δ)
25	25		S	S*	S*	S	S		
26	26		G	G*	G	G	G		Canonical AA for H1 loop.
27	27		F	F*	F*	F	F		Canonical AA for H1 loop.

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human donor 38P1	225 RK _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
28	28		S	S*	T	T	S		Canonical AA for H1 loop. S=6/104 in human III. (δ2)
29	29		L	L*	F	F	L		Canonical AA for H1 loop. L=1/108 in human III. (δ3)
30	30	FRI	T	T	S	S	T		Canonical AA for H1 loop. T=1/103 in human III. (δ4)
31	31	CDR	N	S	S	S	N		
32	32		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
33	33		G	G	A	D	G		
34	34		V	V	M	M	V		Canonical AA for H1 loop.
35	35		H	H	S	H	H		Packing AA.
35a			.	x	.	.			
35b		CDR1	.	S	.	.			
36	36	FR2	W	W*	W*	W	W		
37	37		V	V	V*	V	V		Packing AA.
38	38		R	R*	R*	R	R		
39	39		Q	Q*	Q*	Q	Q		Packing AA.
40	40		S	P	A	A	A	Half-buried	S=12/97 (& linked to 6Q+13Q+80F+84S+85N+89I) in mouse IB. S=1/91 in human III.
41	41		P [1223]	P*	P	T [11]	T	Surface	[1382] P=75/87 in human III.
42	42		G	G*	G*	G	G		
43	43		K	K*	K*	K	K		
44	44		G	G*	G	G	G		
45	45		L	L*	L*	L	L		Core packing AA.
46	46		E	E*	E	E	E		
47	47		W	W*	W*	W	W		Packing AA.
48	48		L	L*	V	V	L	Buried	L=2/86 in human III. Underneath H2 loop (δ5)
49	49	FR2	G [985]	G	S	S [58]	G	Buried	[1390] G=21/86 in human III. Underneath H2. (δ6)
50	50	CDR2	V	V	V	A	V		
51	51		I	I*	I	I	I		
52	52		W	W*	S	G	W		

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
52a			-	-	G	-	-		
52b			-	-	K	-	-		
52c			-	-	T	-	-		
53	53		S	A	D	T	S		
54	54		G	G	G	A	G		
55	55		G	G*	G	G	G		Canonical AA for H2 loop.
56	56		N	S	S	D	N		
57	57		T	T*	T	T	T		
58	58		D	N	Y	Y	D		
59	59		Y	Y*	Y	Y	Y		
60	60		N	N*	A	P	N		
61	61		T	S	D	G	T		
62	62		P	A	S	S	P		
63	63		F	L	V*	V	F		
64	64		T	M	K	K	T		
65	65	CDR2	S	S*	G*	G	S		
66	66	FR3	R	R*	R*	R	R		
67	67		L	L*	F*	F	L	Buried	Leu not seen in human III. (67)
68	68		S	S	T	T	I	Surface	Edge of binding site. Ser not seen in human III.
69	69		I	I*	I*	I	I		
70	70		N [18]	S	S*	S [662]	S	Surface	[1478] Very edge of binding site. N=1/107 in mouse IB. N=1/86 in human III.
71	71		K	K*	R*	R	K	Buried	Canonical AA for H2 loop. Lys is not seen in human III. (68)
72	72		D [1344]	D*	D	E [31]	E	Half-buried	[1457] D=71/85 in human III.
73	73		N	N	N	N	N		
74	74		S	S*	S	A	Δ	Surface	S=75/84 in human III.
75	75		K	K	K	K	K		

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
76	76		S[800]	S	N	N	N	Half-buried	S=8/85 (& possibly linked to 49G) in human III. Conserve if binding poor?
77	77		Q [199]	Q*	T	S [51]	S	Surface	[1419] Gin not seen in human III.
78	78		V	V*	L	L	L	Buried	V=3/84 in human III.
79	79		F	F*	Y	Y	Y	Half-buried	Phe not seen in human III.
80	80		F [24]	L	L*	L [857]	L	Buried	[1490] F=22/112 (& linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+84S+85N+89I) in mouse IB. Phe not seen in human III.
81	81		K	K*	Q	Q	Q	Surface	K=22/52 in human III.
82	82		M	M	M*	M	M		
82a	83		N	N	N	N	N		
82b	84		S	S*	S	S	S		
82c	85		L	L	L	L*	L		
83	86		Q [118]	Q	R	R [415]	R	Surface	[1482] Q=4/93 in human III.
84	87		S	T	A	A	A	Surface	S=4/116 (& possibly linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+80F+85N+89I) in mouse IB. Ser not seen in human III.
85	88		N [12]	D	E [1244]	G [9]	G	Surface	[1503] N=11/116 (& linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+80F+84S+89I) in mouse IB. Asn not seen in human III.
86	89		D	D*	D	D	D		
87	90		T	T*	T	T	T		
88	91		A	A*	A*	A	A		
89	92		I	M	V	V	V	Half-buried	I=24/113 (& possibly linked to 6Q+13Q+40S+80F+84S+85N) in mouse IB. I=1/94 in human III.
90	93		Y	Y*	Y*	Y	Y		
91	94		Y	Y*	Y*	Y	Y		Packing AA.
92	95		C	C*	C*	C	C		
93	96		A	A*	A	A	A		Packing AA.
94	97		FR3	R	R	R	R		Canonical AA for H1 loop.
95	98	CDR3	A	D	G	S	A		Packing AA. (Unusual AA)

Table 9 - Continued

Kabat	#	FR or CDR	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38PI	225 RH _A	Surface or Buried	Comment
96	99		L	R	R	F	L		
97	100		T	G	X	S	T		
98	101		Y	V	G	E	Y		
99	102		Y	x	X	T	Y		
100	103		D	R	S	E	D		
100a	104		Y	Y	L	D	Y		
100b	105		E	D	S	A	E		
100c			-	P	G	-	-		
100d			-	D	x	-	-		
100e			-	K	Y	-	-		
100f			-	Y	Y	-	-		
100g			-	F	Y	-	-		
100h			-	T	Y	-	-		
100i			-	L	H	-	-		
100j			-	W	Y	-	-		
100k	106		F	F	F	F	F		Core packing AA.
101	107		A	D	D	D	A		
102	108	CDR3	Y	Y	Y	I	Y		
103	109	FR4	W	W*	W*	W	W		Core packing AA.
104	110		G	G*	G*	G	G		
105	111		Q	Q*	Q	Q	Q		
106	112		G	G*	G*	G	G		
107	113		T	T*	T*	T	T		
108	114		L [349]	L	L	M [28]	M		[1020] L=59/76 in human III.
109	115		V	V	V*	V	V		
110	116		T	T*	T*	T	T		
111	117		V	V*	V*	V	V		
112	118		S	S*	S*	S	S		
113	119	FR4	A	S	S*	S	S		A=28/76 in mouse IB. Ala not seen in human III.

Table 9 - Continued

Comparison of AA Variable Region AA Sequences to M225	Mouse C225	Mouse IB	Human III	Human Donor 38P1	225 RH _A	Comment
PERCENT IDENTITY	100.0	78.15	55.46	48.74	76.47	There are 26 amino acid mismatches in the FR between the
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	88.51	63.22	58.62	67.82	variable regions of the reshaped heavy chain H225RH _A and the mouse M225 heavy chain
PERCENT SIMILARITY	100.0	84.87	71.43	67.23	84.87	225RH _B = 225 RH _A + T41P 225RH _C = 225 RH _A + T68S + S70N
FRAMEWORKS ONLY	100.0	93.10	79.31	75.86	79.31	225RH _D = 225 RH _B + 225RH _C 225RH _E = 225 RH _A + L78V

Legend: (*) invariant residues as defined either by the Kabat consensus sequences i.e. 95% or greater occurrence within Kabat subgroup (Kabat *et al.*, 1991) (in the case of columns 5 and 6) or as part of the canonical structure for the CDR loops (in the case of column 8) as defined by Chothia *et al.*, (1989); (**BOLD**) positions in Frs and CDRs where the human amino acid residue was replaced by the corresponding mouse residue (UNDERLINE) positions in Frs where the human residue differs from the analogous mouse residue number; (δ) numbering of changes in the human Frs; (mouse C225) amino acid sequence of the V_H region from chimeric C225 antibody; (mouse IB) consensus sequence of mouse V_H regions from subgroup IB (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (human III) consensus sequence of human V_H regions from subgroup III (Kabat *et al.*, 1991); (Human Donors: 38P1) amino acid sequence from human antibody 38P1'CL (Schroeder Jr *et al.* 1987); (Surface or Buried) position of amino acid in relation to the rest of the residues in both chains of the antibody variable regions; (225RH_A) amino acid sequence of the first version of the reshaped human mAb H225 V_H region. (Core packing of the first version of the reshaped human mAb H225 V_H region (Core packing AA/Packing AA) amino acids located at the V_L/V_H interface as defined by Chothia *et al.* (1985); (Canonical AA) amino acids defined by Chothia and Lesk (1987), Chothia *et al.* (1989), Tramontano *et al.* (1990) and Chothia *et al.* (1992) as being important for CDR loop conformation.

Table 10. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_A.

Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
225RK _A .LEAD (88mer)	C T G G A G A C T G A G T C A G T A C G A T T T C A C T T C T G G A G G C T C G A A T C C A G A A A A G C A A A A A T A C T T G G T T C T G A G G T G T G G A T A C C A T G G T
225RK _A .FR1 (80mer)	T C G T A C T G A C T C A G T C T C C A G C C A C C C T G T C T T T G A G T C C A G G A G A A A G A G C C A C C C T C T C C T G C A G G G C C A G T C A G A G T
225RK _A .FR2a (74mer)	G A G A T A G A C T C A G A A G C A T A C T T T A T G A G A A G C C T T G G A G C C T G G C C A G G T C T T T G C T G A T A C C A G T G T A T G T T
225RK _A .FR3 (71mer)	G G C T T C T C A T A A A G T A T G C T T C T G A G T C T A T C T C T G G A A T C C C T G C C A G G T T T A G T G G C A G T G G A T C A G G G
225RK _A .FR3a (77mer)	T T T T G T T G A C A G T A A T A A A C T G C A A A A T C T T C A G G C T C C A C A C T G C T G A T G G T A A G A G T A A A A T C T G T C C C T G A T C C
225RK _A .CDR3 (33mer)	G A T T T T G C A G T T T A T T A C T G T C A A C A A A A T A A T
225RK _A .FR4a (68mer)	T C T A G A A G G A T C C A C T C A C G T T T C A G C T C C A C C T T G G T C C C T C C A C C G A A C G T G G T T G G C C A G T T A T T
225RK _A .V78L (42mer)	A C T C T T A C C A T C A G C A G T C T G G A G C C T G A A G A T T T T G C A G T T
225RK _A .L108I (57mer)	T C T A G A A G G A T C C A C T C A C G T T T G A T C T C C A C C T T G G T C C C T C C A C C G A A C G T G G T T

Table 10. continued...

225RK_A-LS7 leader
(99mer)

A A G C T T G C C G C C A C C A T G G A
A G C C C C A G C T C A G C T T C T C T
T C C T C T T G C T T C T C T G G C T C
C C A G A T A C C A C C G G A G A A A T
C G T A C T G A C T C A G T C T C C A

Table 11. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 kappa light chain variable region gene 225RK_B.

Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
225RK _B .K49Y (60mer)	C A G C A A A G A C C T G G C C A G G C T C C A A G G C T T C T C A T A T A T T A T G C T T C T G A G T C T A T C T C T
APCR40 (25mer)	C T G A G A G T G C A C C A T A T G C G G T G T G

Table 12. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region gene 225RH_A.

Name	Sequence (5' - 3')
225RH _A .FR1 (37mer)	GGTGCAGCTGGTCGAGTCTG GGGGAGGCTTGGTACAG
225RH _A .FR1a (50mer)	GGCTGTACCAAGCCTCCCCC AGACTCGACCAGCTGCACCT CACACTGGAC
225RH _A .CDR1a (64mer)	CCCAGTGTACACCATAGTTA GTTAATGAGAAATCCGGAGAC TGCACAGGAGAGTCTCAGGG ACCC
225RH _A .FR2 (63mer)	TTAAC TAACTATGGTGTACA CTGGGTTCGCCAGGCTACAG GAAAGGGTCTGGAGTGGCTG GGA
225RH _A .FR3a (74mer)	CTGTTCA TTTG CAGATACAG GGAGTTCTTGGCATTTTCCT TGGAGATGGTCAGTCGACTT GTGAAAGGTGTATT
225RH _A .FR3 (73mer)	CTCCCTGTATCTGCAAATGA ACAGTCTCAGAGCCGGGGAC ACAGCCGTGTATTACTGTGC CAGAGCCCTCACCC
225RH _A .FR4a (65mer)	GGATCCACTCACCTGAAGAG ACAGTGACCATAGTCCCTTG GCCCCAGTAAGCAAA

Table 13. Primers for constructing reshaped human antibody H225 heavy chain variable region genes 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D and 225RH_E.

Name	Sequence (5' → 3')
225RH _B .T41P-S (35mer)	G G G T T C G C C A G G C T C C A G G A A A G G G T C T G G A G T G G
225RH _B .T41P-AS (30mer)	T C C T G G A G C C T G G C G A A C C C A G T G T A C A C C
225RH _C .T68S/S70N (46mer)	C A C A A G T C G A C T G A G C A T C A A C A A G G A A A A T G C C A A G A A C T C C C T G
225RH _E .L78V (72mer)	C A C A A G T C G A C T G A C C A T C T T C A A G G A A A A T G C C A A G A A C T C C G T T T A T C T G C A A A T G A A C A G T C T C A G A G C
APCR10 (25mer)	T A C G C A A A C C G C C T C T C C C C G C G C G
APCR40 (25mer)	C T G A G A G T G C A C C A T A T G C G G T G T G
RSP (Reverse Sequencing Primer) (24mer)	A G C G G A T A A C A A T T T C A C A C A G G A
UP (Universal Primer) (24mer)	C G C C A G G G T T T T C C C A G T C A C G A C

WHAT WE CLAIM IS:

1. A polypeptide lacking the constant region and the variable light chain of an antibody, the polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R, or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
2. A polypeptide according to Claim 1, comprising amino acid sequences N Y G V H and G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
3. A polypeptide consisting of the amino acid sequence N Y G V H or G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R.
4. A polypeptide consisting of the amino acid sequence N Y G V H or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
5. A polypeptide according to Claim 1 conjugated to an effector molecule.
6. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule inhibits tumor growth.
7. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is cytotoxic.
8. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is doxorubicin.
9. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is cisplatin.
10. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is taxol.
11. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is a signal transduction inhibitor.
12. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is a ras inhibitor.

13. A polypeptide according to Claim 5 wherein the effector molecule is a cell cycle inhibitor.
14. DNA encoding a polypeptide lacking the constant region and the variable light chain of an antibody, the polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence N Y G V H, G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
15. DNA encoding the polypeptide of Claim 14 comprising amino acid sequences N Y G V H and G V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S R or V I W S G G N T D Y N T P F T S.
16. DNA encoding a polypeptide according to Claim 14 conjugated to an effector molecule.
17. DNA encoding a polypeptide according to Claim 16 wherein the effector molecule inhibits tumor growth.
18. A molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule.
19. A molecule according to Claim 18 wherein the effector molecule is a cytotoxic agent.
20. A molecule according to Claim 19 wherein the cytotoxic agent is doxorubicin.
21. A molecule according to Claim 19 wherein the cytotoxic agent is taxol.
22. A molecule according to Claim 19 wherein the cytotoxic agent is cisplatin.
23. A molecule comprising: a constant region of a human antibody; a variable region other than the CDRs of a human antibody, the variable region comprising a kappa light chain and a heavy chain, and the CDRs of monoclonal antibody 225.

24. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the constant region has an amino acid sequence of an IgG.
25. A molecule according to claim 24 wherein the IgG is IgG1.
26. A molecule according to claim 23 that is reshaped according to Example IV.
27. A molecule according to claim 23, wherein the heavy chain has at least one amino acid, according to the Kabat numbering system, at an amino acid position selected from the group consisting of 24, 28, 29, 30, 41, 48, 49, 67, 68, 70, 71 and 78, substituted with a murine amino acid selected from the corresponding Kabat amino acid position.
28. A molecule according to claim 23, wherein the kappa light chain has an amino acid, according to the Kabat numbering system, at position 49 substituted with a murine amino acid selected from the corresponding Kabat amino acid position.
29. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence selected from 225RK_A or 225RK_B.
30. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the heavy chain variable region has an amino acid sequence selected from 225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, or 225RH_E.
31. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.
32. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

33. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

34. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

35. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

36. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.

37. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

38. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

39. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

40. A molecule according to claim 23 wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

41. A molecule according to Claim 23, wherein the molecule is attached to an effector molecule.

42. A molecule according to Claim 39, wherein the effector molecule is a cytotoxic agent.

43. A molecule according to Claim 40, wherein the cytotoxic agent is doxorubicin.

44. A molecule according to Claim 40, wherein the cytotoxic agent is taxol.

45. A molecule according to Claim 40, wherein the cytotoxic agent is cisplatin

46. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of the polypeptide according to Claim 1.

47. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of the polypeptide according to Claim 3 or Claim 4.

48. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the variable region of monoclonal antibody 225.

49. A method for significantly inhibiting the growth of tumor cells in a human comprising administering to the human an effective amount of a molecule having a constant region of a human antibody; a variable region other than the CDRs of a human antibody, the variable region comprising a kappa light chain and heavy chain,
5 and the CDRs of monoclonal antibody 225.

50. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has an amino acid sequence selected from 225RK_A or 225RK_B.

51. A method according to claim 47, wherein the heavy chain variable region has an amino acid sequence selected from 225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, or 225RH_E.

52. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.

53. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

54. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

55. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

56. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_A and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

57. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_A.

58. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_B.

59. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_C.

60. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_D.

61. A method according to claim 47, wherein the kappa light chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RK_B and the heavy chain variable region has amino acid sequence 225RH_E.

62. A method according to any of Claims 44-47, further comprising administering a cytotoxic agent.

63. A molecule according to Claim 60, wherein the cytotoxic agent is doxorubicin.

64. A molecule according to Claim 60, wherein the cytotoxic agent is taxol.

65. A molecule according to Claim 60, wherein the cytotoxic agent is cisplatin

66. The method according to Claim 44 or Claim 45, wherein the polypeptide is conjugated to an effector molecule.

67. The method according to Claim 46 or Claim 47, wherein the molecule is conjugated to an effector molecule.

68. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is cytotoxic.

69. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is doxorubicin.

70. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is cisplatin.

71. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is taxol.
72. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is a signal transduction inhibitor.
73. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is a ras inhibitor.
74. The method according to Claim 64, wherein the effector molecule is a cell cycle inhibitor.
75. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is cytotoxic.
76. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is doxorubicin.
77. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is cisplatin.
78. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is taxol.
79. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is a signal transduction inhibitor.
80. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is a ras inhibitor.
81. The method according to Claim 65, wherein the effector molecule is a cell cycle inhibitor.
82. The method according to any of Claims 44-47, wherein the tumor cells are prostatic tumor cells.
83. The method according to Claim 80, wherein the prostatic tumor cells are late stage prostatic tumor cells.

84. A nucleic acid molecule that encodes a molecule comprising: a constant region of a human antibody; a variable region other than the CDRs of a human antibody, the variable region comprising a kappa light chain and a heavy chain, and the CDRs of monoclonal antibody 225.

85. A vector comprising the nucleic acid molecule claim of 84.

86. A vector according to claim 85, wherein the vector is an expressible vector.

87. A vector according to claim 86, wherein the vector is expressible in a prokaryotic cell.

88. A vector according to claim 86, wherein the vector is expressible in a eukaryotic cell.

89. A prokaryotic cell comprising the expressible vector of claim 87.

90. An eukaryotic cell comprising the expressible vector of claim 88.

91. A pharmaceutical composition, comprising the molecule of claim 23 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Figure 1

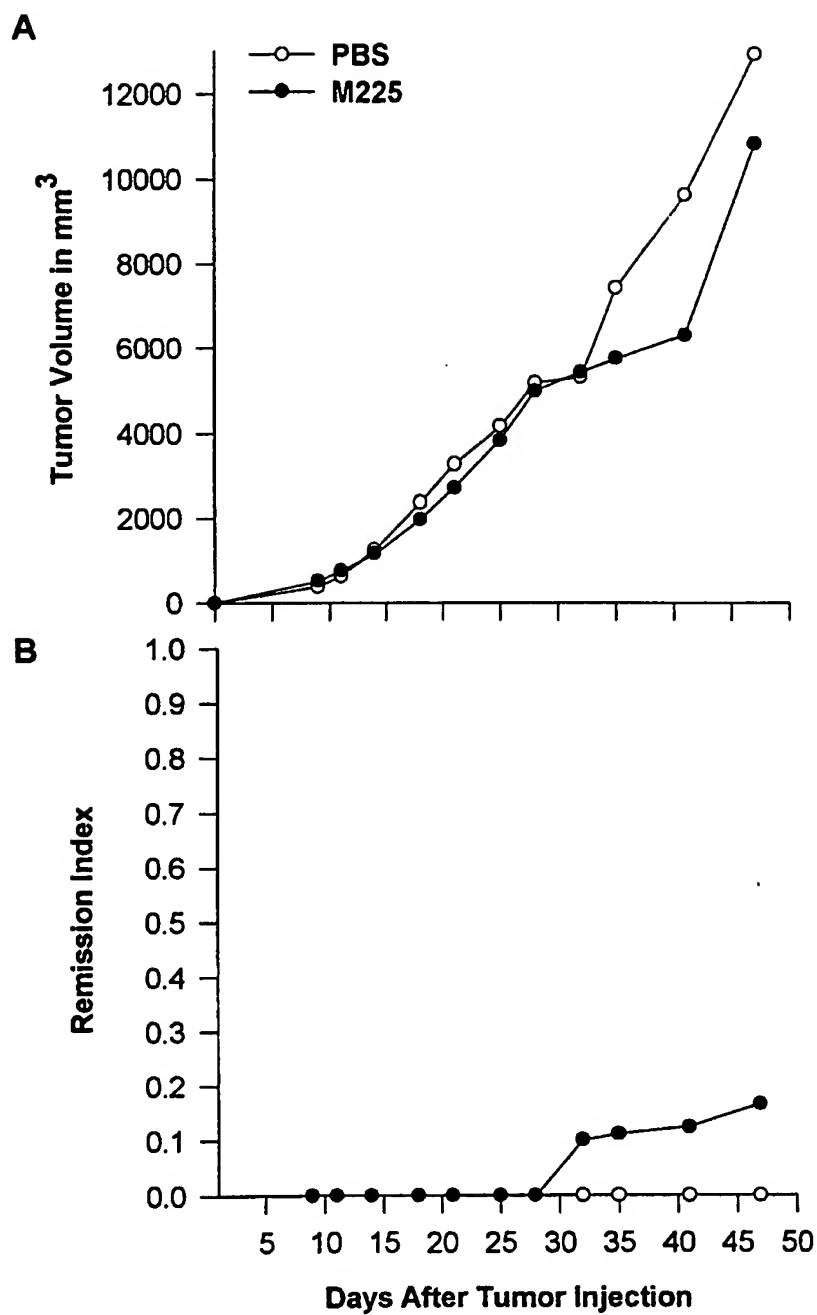


Figure 2

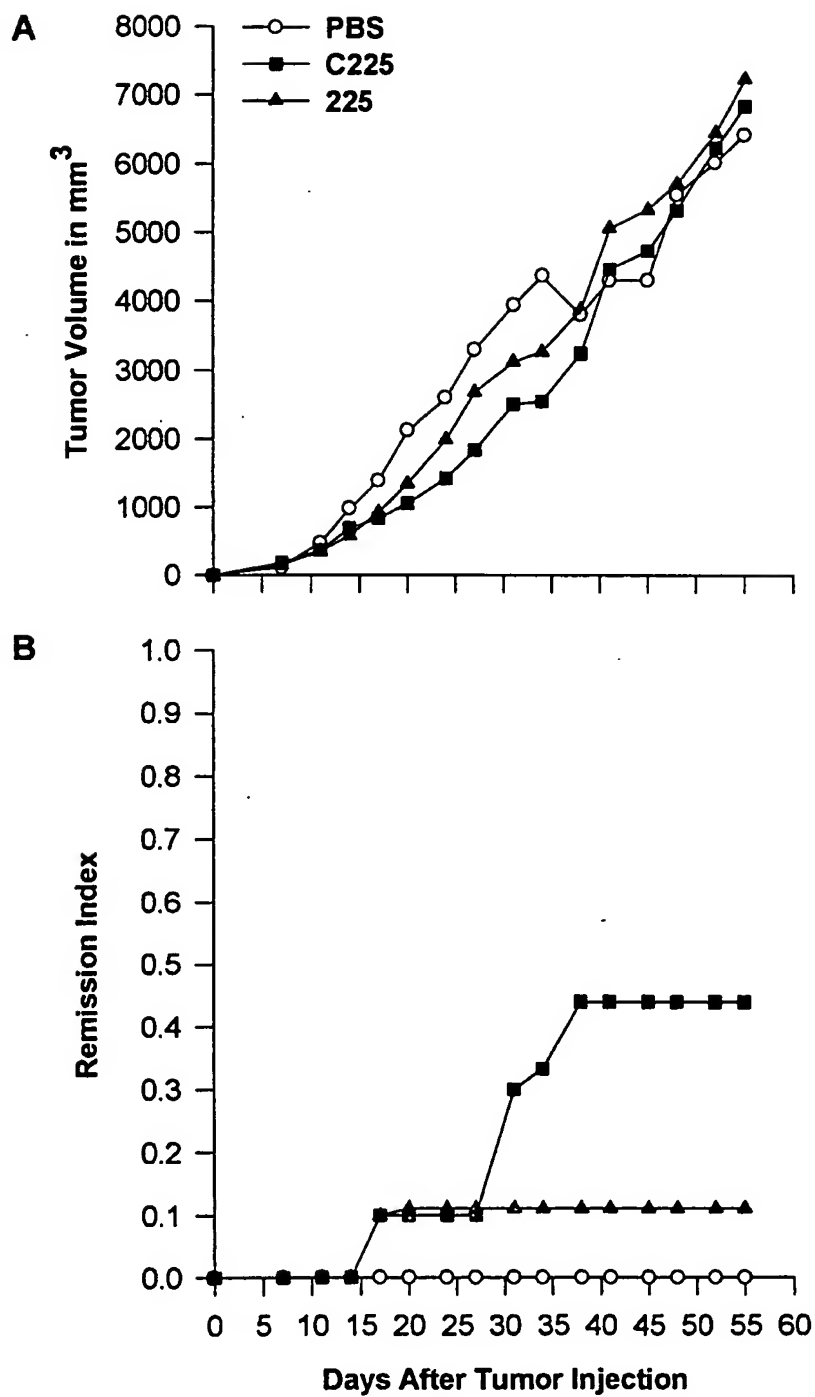


Figure 3

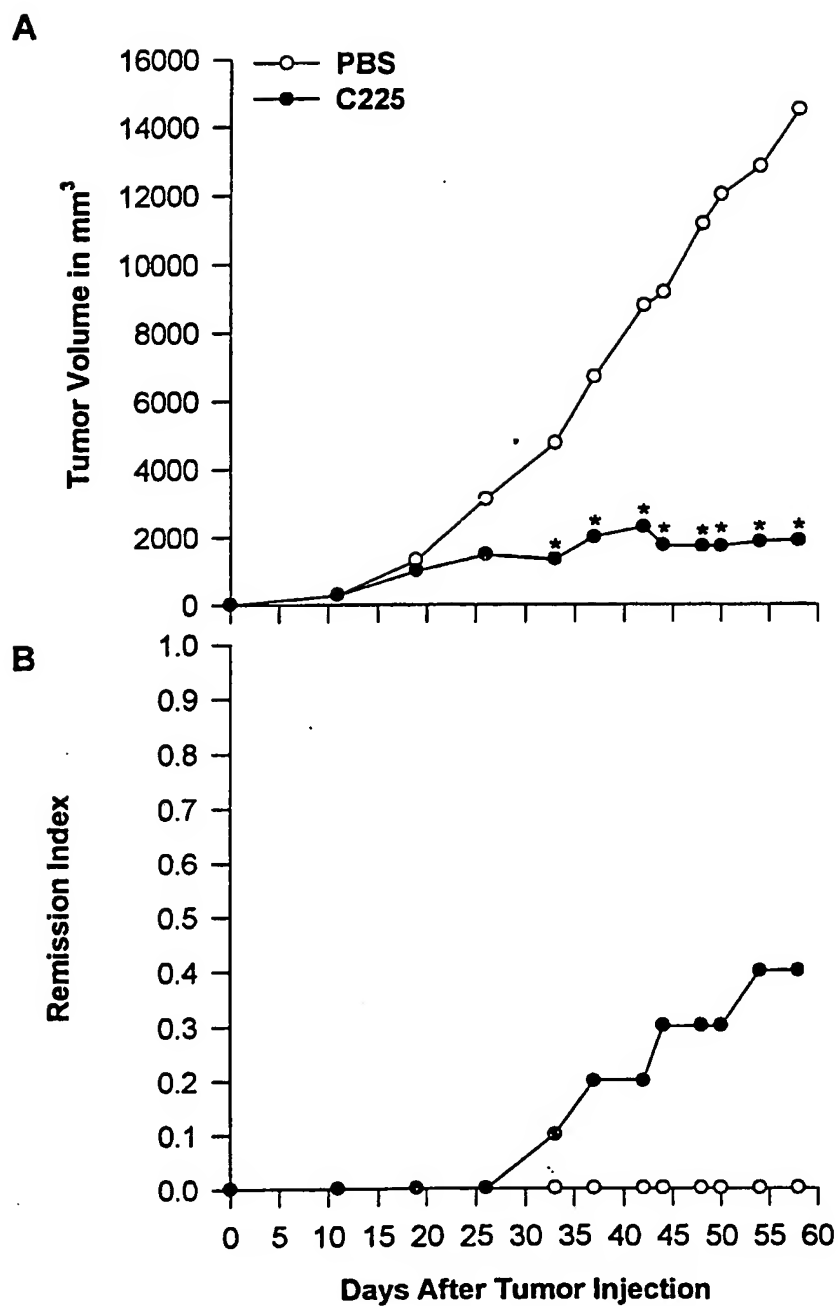
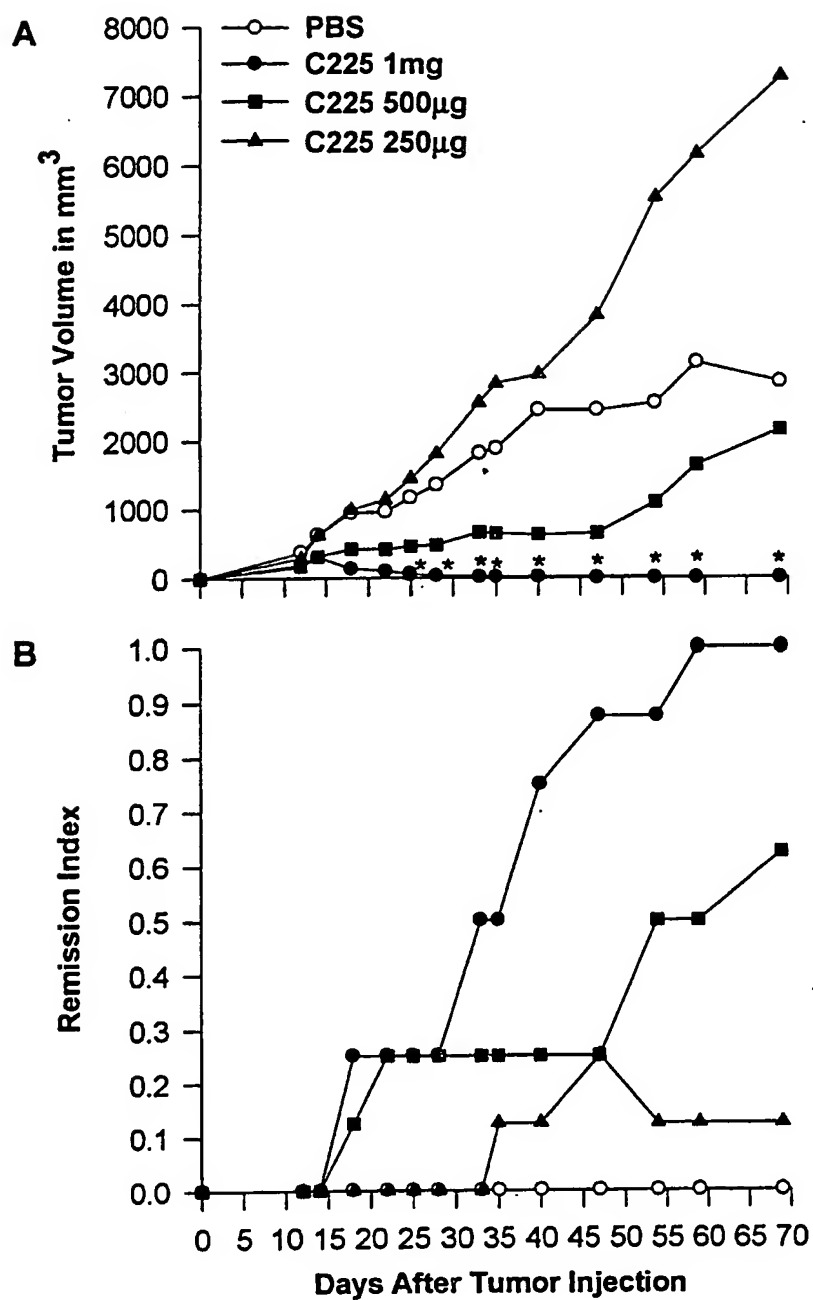


Figure 4



Inhibition of A431 with C225-vH1 and C225-vH2 Peptides
Measured by ^3H -Thy Incorporation

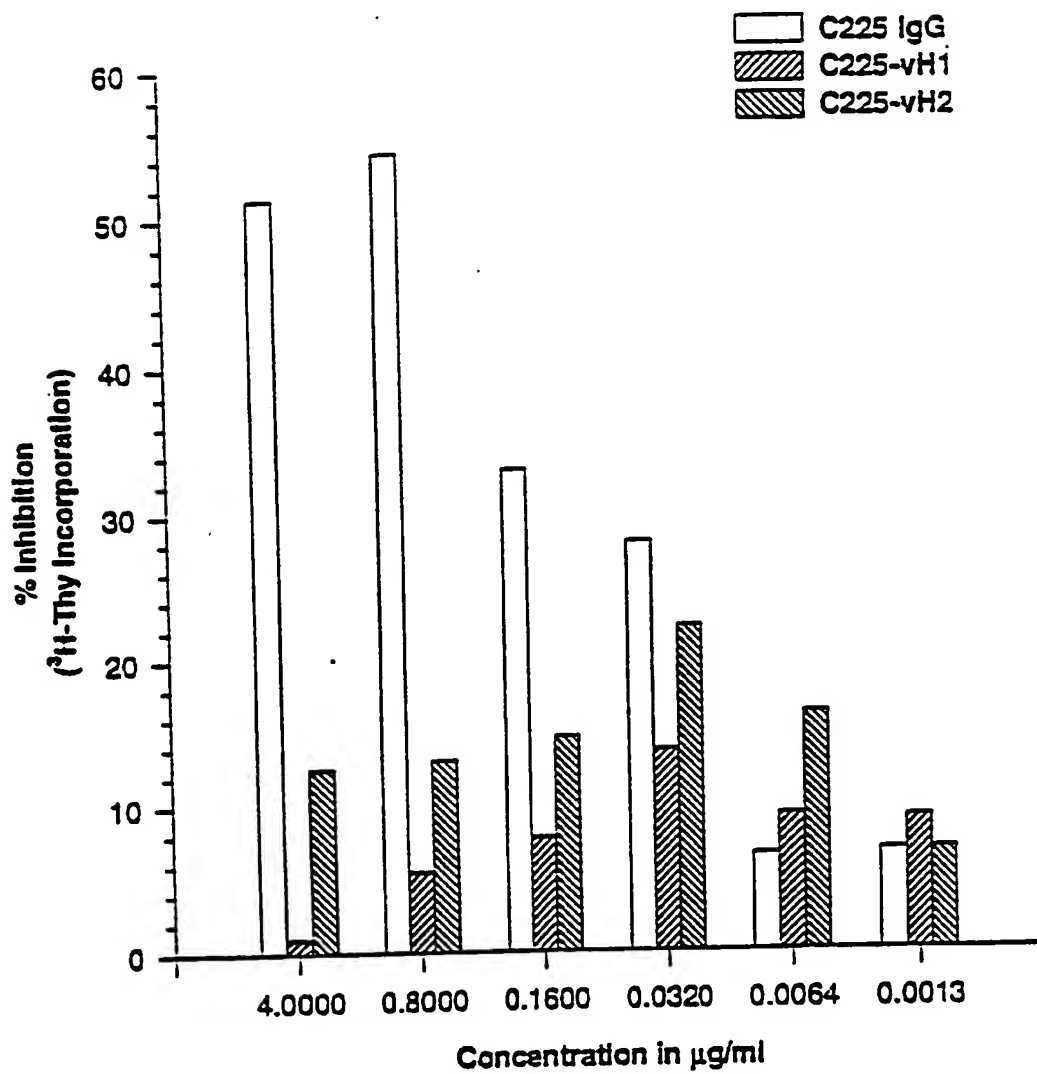


Figure 5

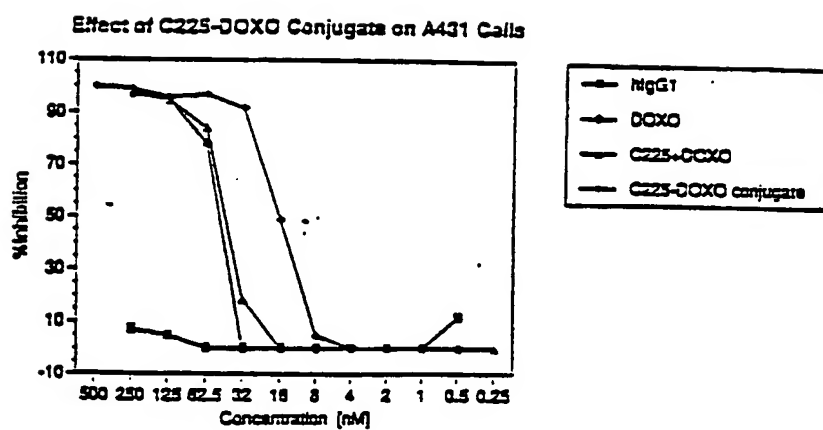


Figure 6

Figure 7

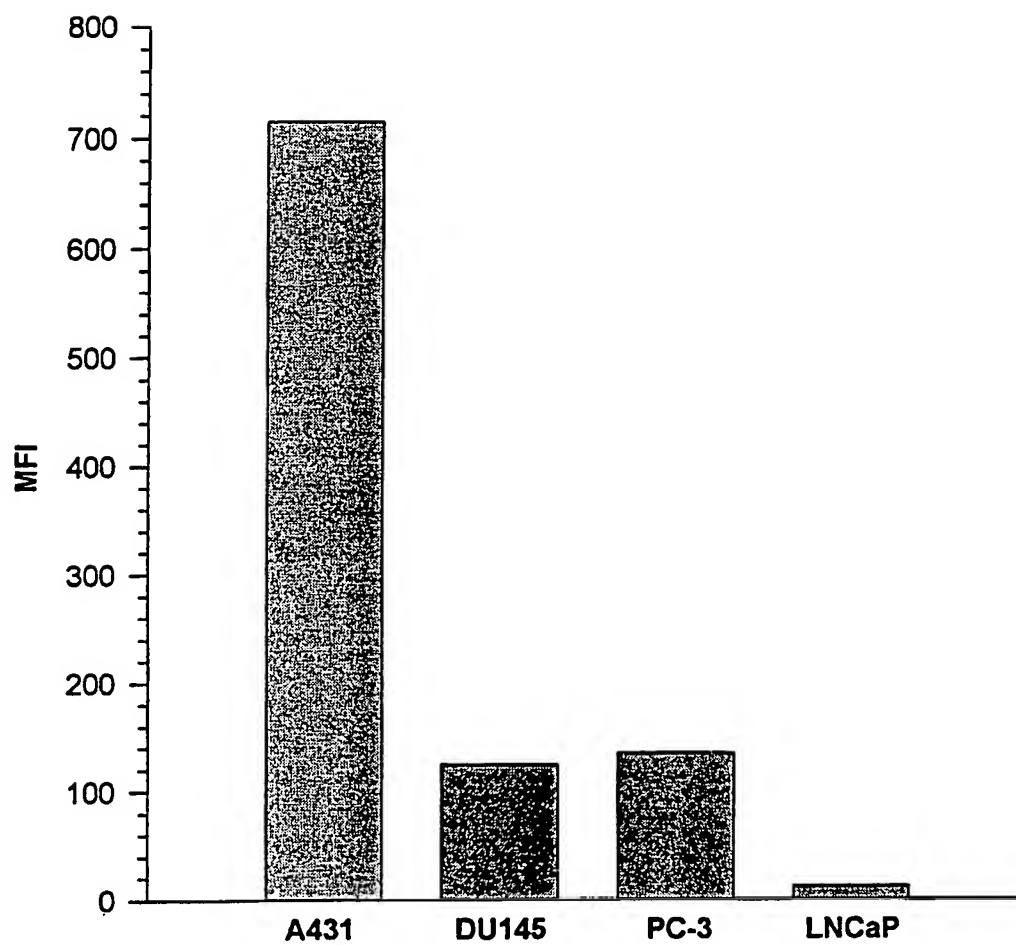
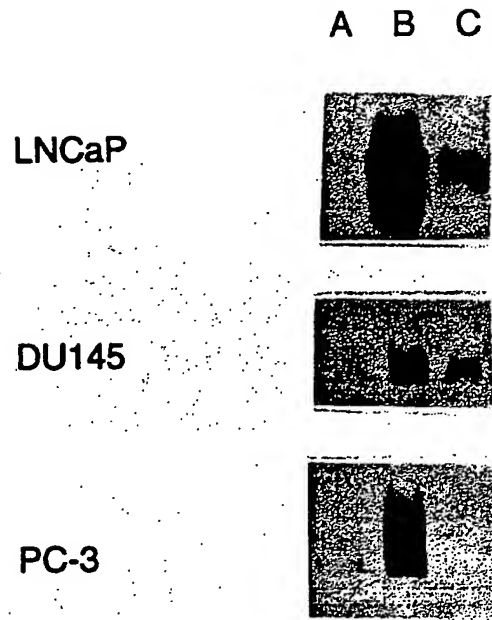


Figure 8



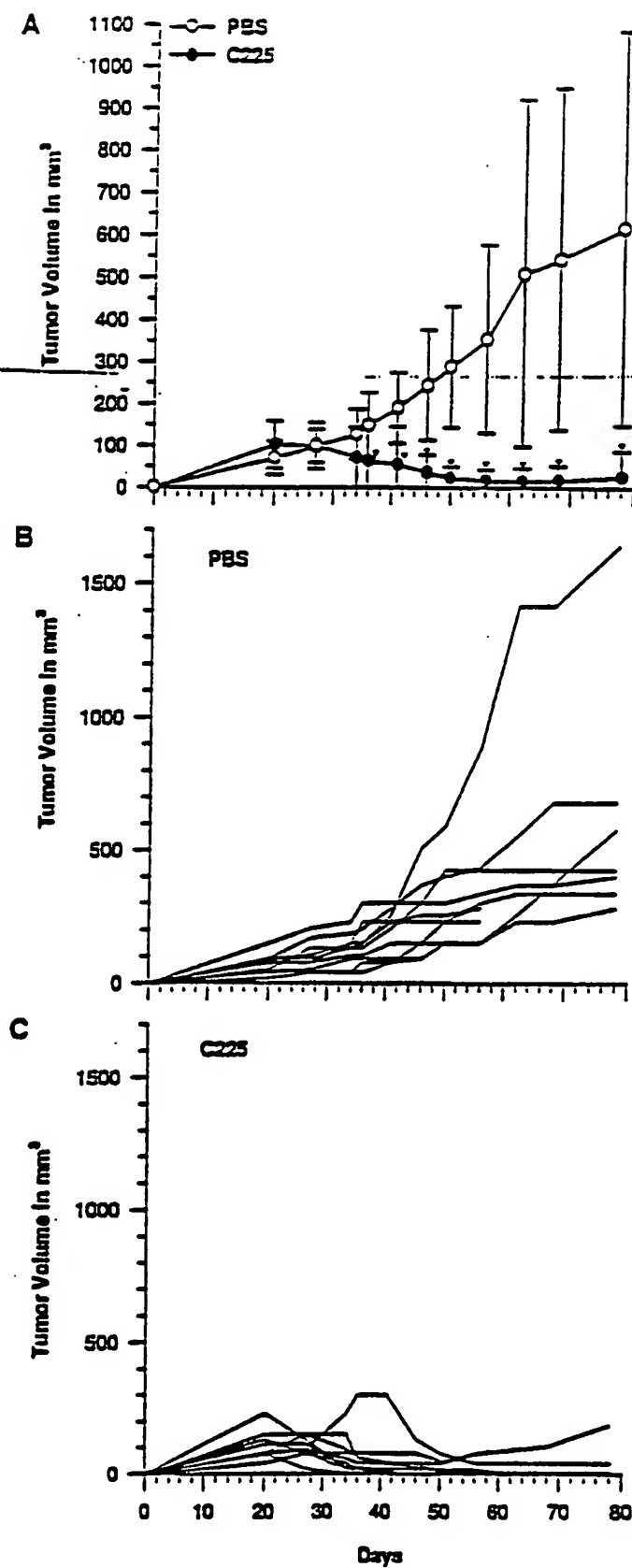


Figure 9

Figure 10

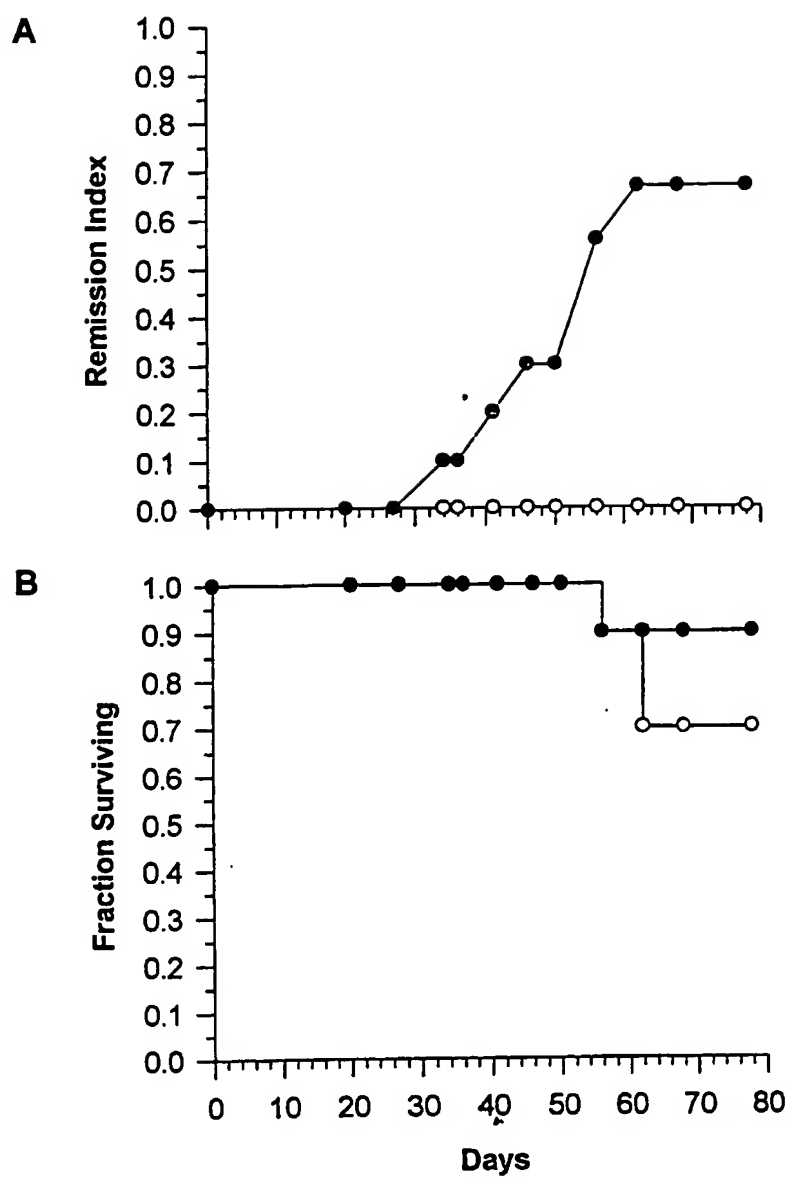


Figure 11: Schematic representation of the pKN100 mammalian expression vector used for the expression of the kappa light chains of the chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 antibody.

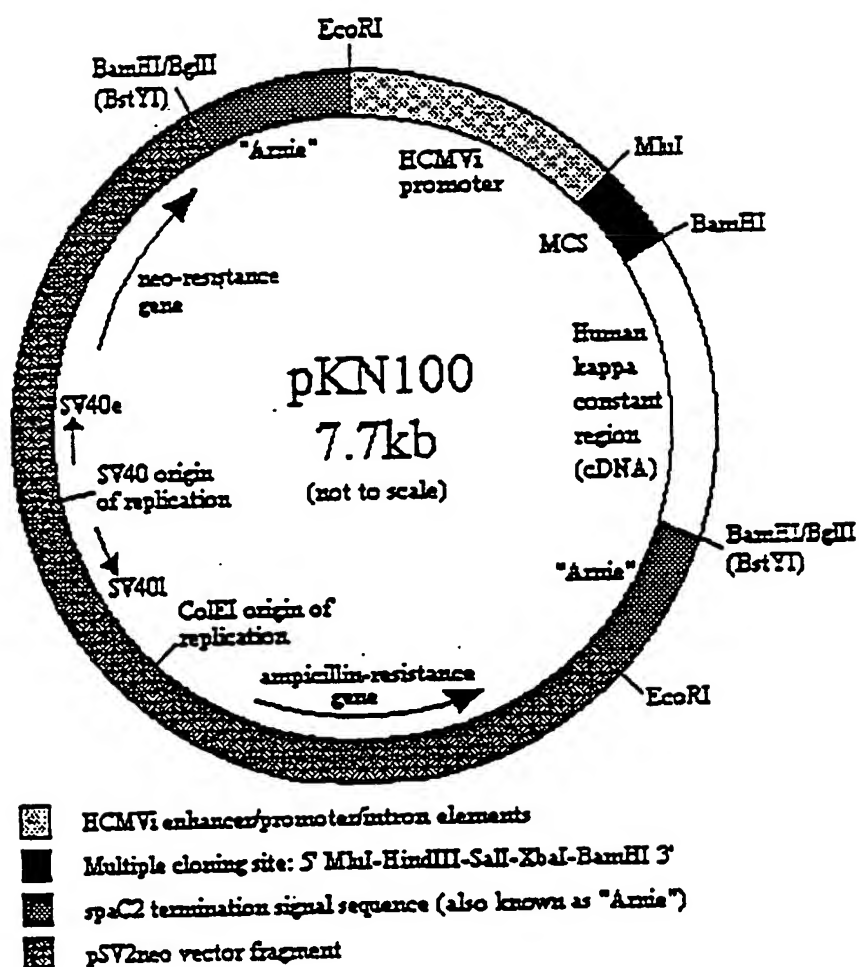


Figure 12: Schematic representation of the pG1D105 mammalian expression vector used for the expression of the heavy chains of the chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 antibody.

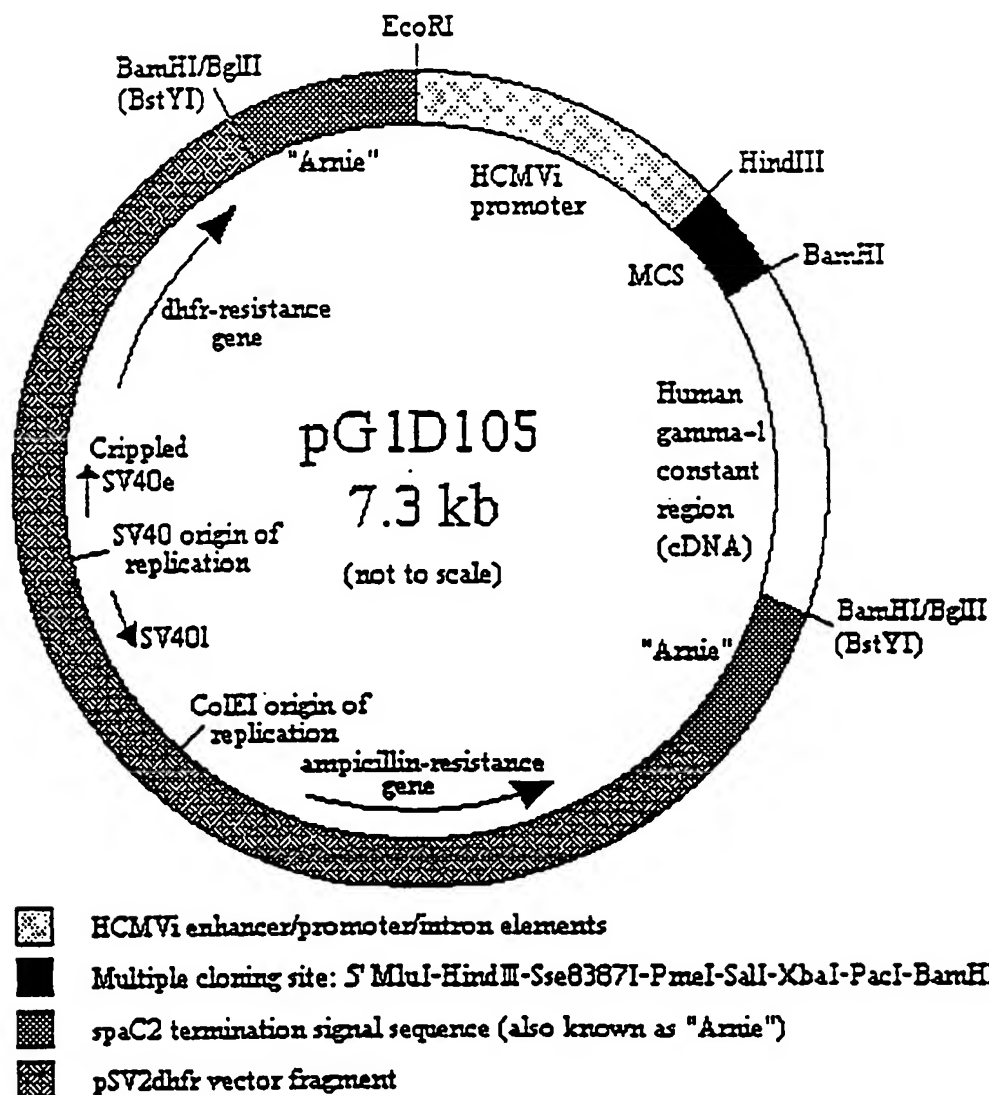


Figure 13: DNA and peptide sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the M225 antibody. The PCR-clones from which this information was obtained were amplified using the degenerate primer MKV4 (7).

MKV4 atgagggccctgctcagtttcttggttcttg
 a a t aa

atgagggccctgctcagtttcttggttcttggtttcttgattccagcctccagaagt
 1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
 tactcccggggacgagtc aaagaaccgaagaacgaaaagacctaagggtcggaggtcttca
 M R A P A Q F L G F L L F W I P A S R S

gacatcttgctgactcagtcctccagtcacacctgtctgtgagtcaggagaaagagtcagt
 61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
 ctgtagaacgactgagtcagaggtcagtaggacagacactcaggtcctctttctcagtc
 D I L L T Q S P V I L S V S P G E R V S

ttctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaaacatacactggtatcagcaaagaaca
 121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
 aagaggacgtcccggtcagtcctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgaccatagtcgtttcttgt
 F S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W Y Q Q R T

aatggttctccaaggcttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtcctatctctgggatcccttcc
 181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
 ttaccaagaggttccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatagagaccctaggaagg
 N G S P R L L I K Y A S E S I S G I P S

aggttttagtggcagtggtatcaggacagattttactcttagcatcaacagtggtgagtc
 241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
 tccaaatcacgtcacctagtcctgtctaaaatgagaatcgtagttgtcacacctcaga
 R F S G S G S G T D F T L S I N S V E S

gaagatattgcagattattactgtcaacaaaataataactggccaaccacgttcggtgct
 301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
 cttctataacgtctaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggttggtgcaagccacga
 E D I A D Y Y C Q Q N N N W P T T F G A

gggaccaagctggagctgaaa
 361 -----+-----+-----+ 381
 ccctgggttcgacctcgacttt
 G T K L E L K

Figure 14: DNA and peptide sequences of the heavy chain variable region of the M225 antibody. The PCR-clones from which this information was obtained were amplified using the degenerate primer MHV6 (7).

MHV6 atggctgtcttggcgctgctcttctgc
 c a g a

atggctgtcttggcgctgctcttctgcctggtagacattcccaagctgtgtcctatcccag
1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
taccgacagaaccgcgacgagaagacggaccactgtaagggttcgacacaggatagggtc
M A V L A L L F C L V T F P S C V L S Q

gtgcagctgaagcagtcaggacctggcctagtgcagccctcacagagcctgtccatcacc
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
gacgtcgacttcgtcagtcctggaccggatcacgtcgggagtgctcggacaggtagtg
V Q L K Q S G P G L V Q P S Q S L S I T

tgacagctctctggtttctcattaactaactatgggtgtacactgggttcgccagctctcca
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
acgtgtcagagaccaaagagtaattgattgataccacatgtgacccaagcggtcagaggt
C T V S G F S L T N Y G V H W V R Q S P

ggaaagggtctggagtggctgggagtgatatggagtggaggaaacacagactataataca
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
cctttcccagacctcaccgacctcactatacctcaccacctttgtgtctgatattatgt
G K G L E W L G V I W S G G N T D Y N T

cctttcacatccagactgagcatcaacaaggacaattccaagagccaagttttctttaaa
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
ggaaagtgtaggtctgactcgtagttgttcctgttaagggttctcggttcaaaagaaattt
P F T S R L S I N K D N S K S Q V F F K

atgaacagctctgcaatctaataacacagccatatattactgtgccagagccctcacctac
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
tacttgtcagacgttagattactgtgtcgggtatataatgacacggtctcgggagtggtg
M N S L Q S N D T A I Y Y C A R A L T Y

tatgattacgagtttgcttactggggccaagggactctgggtcactgtctctgca
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 414
atactaatactcaaacgaatgaccccggttccctgagaccagtgacagagacgt
Y D Y E F A Y W G Q G T L V T V S A

Figure 15: DNA and peptide sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the C225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatgagggccctgctcagtttcttggttcttgctttctggatt
1  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtactcccgaggacgagtc aaagaaccgaagaacgaaaagacctaa

      M R A P A Q F L G F L L F W I

ccagcctccagaagtgacatcttgctgactcagtcctccagtcacctgtctgtgagtcca
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ggtcggaggtcttcactgtagaacgactgagtcagaggtcagtaggacagacactcaggt

      P A S R S D I L L T Q S P V I L S V S P

ggagaaagagtcagtttctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaacatacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
cctctttctcagtc aaagaggacgtcccggtcagtcctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgacc

      G E R V S F S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W

tatcagcaaagaacaaatggttctccaaggcttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtctatc
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
atagtcgtttcttgtttaccaagaggtccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatag

      Y Q Q R T N G S P R L L I K Y A S E S I

tctgggatcccttccagggttagtggtgagtgatcagggacagattttactcttagcatc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
agaccctaggggaaggtccaaatcacctgtcacctagtcacctgtctaaaatgagaatcgtag

      S G I P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L S I

aacagtggtgagtcctgaagatattgcagattattactgtcaacaaaataataactggcca
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
ttgtcacacctcagacttctataacgtctaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggt

      N S V E S E D I A D Y Y C Q Q N N N W P

accacgttcggtgctgggaccaagctggagctgaaacgtgagtggtccttctaga
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 416
tggtgcaagccacgaccctggttcgacctgactttgcactcacctaggaagatct

      T T F G A G T K L E L K

```

Figure 16: DNA and peptide sequences of the heavy chain variable region of the C225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggctgtcttggggctgctcttctgcctgggtgacattcccaagc
1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtaccgacagaaccccgacgagaagacggaccactgtaagggttcg

      M A V L G L L F C L V T F P S

tgtgtcctatcccaggtgcagctgaagcagtcaggacctggcctagtgcagccctcacag
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
acacaggatagggtccacgtcgacttcgtcagtcctggaccggatcacgtcgggagtgtc

      C V L S Q V Q L K Q S G P G L V Q P S Q

agcctgtccatcacctgcacagtctctggtttctcattaactaactatgggtgtacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
tcggacaggtagtggacgtgtcagagaccaaagagtaattgattgataccacatgtgacc

      S L S I T C T V S G F S L T N Y G V H W

gttcgccagctctccaggaaagggctctggagtggctgggagtgatatggagtgggtgaaac
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
caagcggtcagaggtcctttccagacctcaccgacctcactatacctcaccacctttg

      V R Q S P G K G L E W L G V I W S G G N

acagactataatacacctttcacatccagactgagcatcaacaaggacaattccaagagc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
tgtctgatattatgtggaaagtgtaggtctgactcgtagttgttcctgttaagggtctcg

      T D Y N T P F T S R L S I N K D N S K S

caagttttctttaaataaacagctctgcaatctaataacacagccatatattactgtgcc
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
gttcaaaagaaattttacttgtcagacggttagattactgtgtcggtatataatgacacgg

      Q V F F K M N S L Q S N D T A I Y Y C A

agagccctcacctactatgattacgagtttgcttactggggccaagggactctggtcact
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 420
tctcgggagtggatgataactaatgctcaaacgaatgaccccggtccctgagaccagtga

      R A L T Y Y D Y E F A Y W G Q G T L V T

gtctctgcaggtgagtggatcc
421 -----+-----+ 442
cagagacgtccactcacctagg

      V S A

```

Figure 17: DNA and peptide sequences of the kappa light chain variable region of the C225 antibody with the modified leader sequence from the kappa light chain of L7'CL antibody (28).

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggtatccacacctgagttccttgatatttttgcttttctggatt
1  -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtaccataggtgtggactcaaggaacataaaaaacgaaaagacctaa

      M V S T P E F L V F L L F W I

ccagcctccagaggtgacatcttgctgactcagtcctccagtcacctgtctgtgagtcca
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ggtcggaggtctccactgtagaacgactgagtcagaggtcagtaggacagacactcaggt

      P A S R G D I L L T Q S P V I L S V S P

ggagaaagagtcagtttctcctgcagggccagtcagagtattggcacaacatacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
cctctttctcagtcaaagaggacgtcccggtcagtcctcataaccgtgtttgtatgtgacc

      G E R V S F S C R A S Q S I G T N I H W

tattcagcaaagaacaaatggttctccaaggcttctcataaagtatgcttctgagtcctatc
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
atagtcgtttcttggtttaccaagaggttccgaagagtatttcatacgaagactcagatag

      Y Q Q R T N G S P R L L I K Y A S E S I

tctgggatcccttccaggttagtgggcagtggtcagggacagattttactcttagcatc
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
agaccctagggaaaggtccaaatcaccggtcacctagtccctgtctaaaatgagaatcgtag

      S G I P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L S I

aacagtgtggagtcctgaagatattgcagattattactgtcaacaaaataataactggcca
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
ttgtcacacctcagacttctataacgtctaataatgacagttgttttattattgaccggt

      N S V E S E D I A D Y Y C Q Q N N N W P

accacgttcggtgctgggaccaagctggagctgaaacgtgagtggtccttctaga
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 416
tggtgcaagccacgacctggttcgacctgactttgcactcacctaggaagatct

      T T F G A G T K L E L K

```

Figure 18: Typical example of the results of a cell ELISA to measure the binding affinity of chimeric C225 and reshaped human H225 (225RK_A/225RH_A) antibodies to epidermal growth factor receptor expressed on the surface of A431 cells.

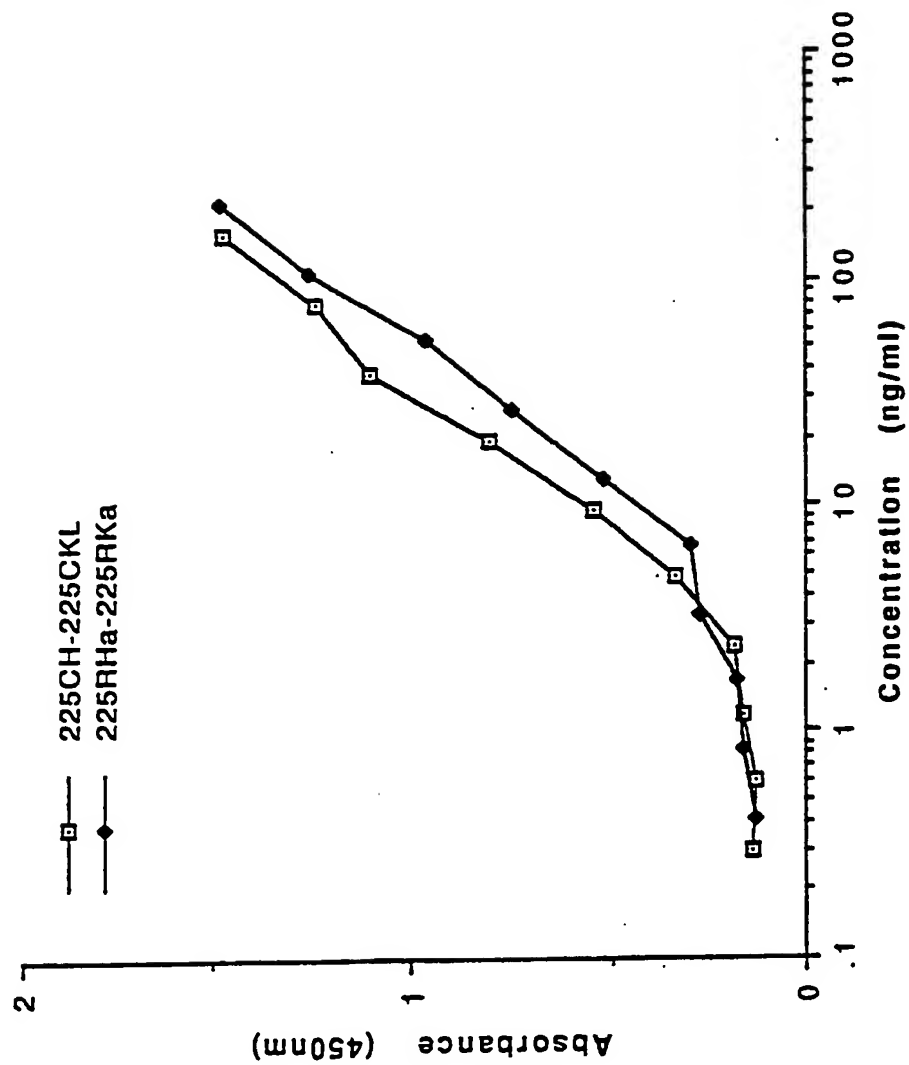


Figure 20: DNA and peptide sequences of the first version (225RH_A) of the heavy chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody.

```

aagcttgccgccaccatggagtttgggctgagctggctttttcttgtggctattttaaaa
1 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 60
ttcgaacggcggtggtacctcaaaccgactcgaccgaaaaagaacaccgataaaatttt

      M E F G L S W L F L V A I L K

gggtgtccagtgtgaggtgcagctggctcgagctctggggaggcttggtacagcctgggggg
61 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 120
ccacaggtcacactccacgtcgaccagctcagacccctccgaaccatgtcggacccccc

      G V Q C E V Q L V E S G G G L V Q P G G

tccttgagactctcctgtgcagctctccggattctcattaactaactatggtgtacactgg
121 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 180
agggactctgagaggacacgtcagaggcctaagagtaattgattgataccacatgtgacc

      S L R L S C A V S G F S L T N Y G V H W

gttcgccaggctacaggaaagggtctggagtggctgggagtgatatggagtgggtgaaac
181 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 240
caagcgggtccgatgtcctttccagacctcaccgacctcactataacctcaccacctttg

      V R Q A T G K G L E W L G V I W S G G N

acagactataatacacctttcacaaagtcgactgaccatctccaaggaaaatgccaaaac
241 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 300
tgtctgatattatgtggaaagtgttcagctgactggttagagggttccttttacggttcttg

      T D Y N T P F T S R L T I S K E N A K N

tccttgatctgcaaataaacagtcctcagagccggggacacagccgtgtattactgtgcc
301 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 360
agggacatagacgtttacttgtcagagtcctcgccctgtgtcggcacataatgacacgg

      S L Y L Q M N S L R A G D T A V Y Y C A

agagccctcacctactatgattacgagtttgcttactggggccaagggactatggctcact
361 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 420
tctcgggagtggtgatgataactaatgctcaaacgaatgaccccggttccttgataccagtga

      R A L T Y Y D Y E F A Y W G Q G T M V T

gtctcttcaggtgagtggatcc
421 -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+ 442
cagagaagtcactcacctagg

      V S S

```

		FRAMEWORK 1																													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2							
											0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3							
M225/C225V ₁		D	I	L	L	T	Q	S	P	V	I	L	S	V	S	P	G	E	R	V	S	F	S	C							
LS7'CL		E	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	T	L	S	L	S	P	G	E	R	A	T	L	S	C							
225RK ₁		E	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	T	L	S	L	S	P	G	E	R	A	T	L	S	C							
225RK ₂																															
		CDR 1										FR 2																			
		2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	3		3	3	3	3	3								
		4	5	6	7	7	7	7	7	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4		5	6	7	8	9								
		A B C D E F																													
M225/C225V ₁		R	A	S	Q	-	-	-	-	-	-	S	I	G	T	N	I	H		W	Y	Q	Q	R							
LS7'CL		R	A	S	Q	-	-	-	-	-	-	S	V	S	S	Y	L	A		W	Y	Q	Q	R							
225RK ₁		R	A	S	Q	-	-	-	-	-	-	S	I	G	T	N	I	H		W	Y	Q	Q	R							
225RK ₂																															
		FRAMEWORK 2										CDR 2										FR 3									
		4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4		5	5	5	5	5	5		5	5	5	6	6								
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1								
M225/C225V ₁		T	N	G	S	P	R	L	L	I	K	Y	A	S	E	S	I	S		G	I	P	S	R							
LS7'CL		P	G	Q	A	P	R	L	L	I	Y	D	A	S	N	R	A	T		G	I	P	A	R							
225RK ₁		P	G	Q	A	P	R	L	L	I	K	Y	A	S	E	S	I	S		G	I	P	A	R							
225RK ₂		Y																													
		FRAMEWORK 3																													
		6	6	6	6	6	6	6	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	8	8	8	8	8	8								
		2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5						
M225/C225V ₁		F	S	S	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	S	I	N	S	V	E	S	E	D	I	A	D						
LS7'CL		F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	E	P	E	D	F	A	V						
225RK ₁		F	S	S	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	E	P	E	D	F	A	V						
225RK ₂																															
		FR 3					CDR 3										FRAMEWORK 4														
		8	8	8		8	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	1	1	1	1	1	1	1							
		6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0							
																	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7														
M225/C225V ₁		Y	Y	C		Q	Q	N	N	N	W	P	T	T		F	G	A	G	T	K	L	E	L	K						
LS7'CL		Y	Y	C		Q	Q	R	S	N	W	P	L	T		F	G	G	G	T	K	V	E	I	K						
225RK ₁																															

Figure 22: Amino acid sequences of the five versions (225RH_A, 225RH_B, 225RH_C, 225RH_D, 225RH_E) of the heavy chain variable region of the reshaped human H225 antibody. Residues are numbered according to Kabat *et al.* (20). Mouse framework residues conserved in the reshaped human frameworks are highlighted in bold.

	FRAMEWORK 1																			
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
M225/C225V _H	Q	V	Q	L	K	Q	S	G	P	G	L	V	Q	P	S	Q	S	L	S	I
38P1'CL	E	V	Q	L	V	E	S	G	G	G	L	V	Q	P	G	G	S	L	R	L
225RH _A	E	V	Q	L	V	E	S	G	G	G	L	V	Q	P	G	G	S	L	R	L
225RH _B																				
225RH _C																				
225RH _D																				
225RH _E																				

	FRAMEWORK 1					CDR 1					FRAMEWORK 2									
	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	5	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2
											A	B								
M225/C225V _H	S	G	F	S	L	T	N	Y	G	V	H	-	-	W	V	R	Q	S	P	G
38P1'CL	S	G	F	T	F	S	S	Y	D	M	H	-	-	W	V	R	Q	A	T	G
225RH _A	S	G	F	S	L	T	N	Y	G	V	H	-	-	W	V	R	Q	A	T	G
225RH _B																			P	
225RH _C																				
225RH _D																			P	
225RH _E																				

	FRAMEWORK 2					CDR 2														
	4	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	2	2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1
									A	B	C									
M225/C225V _H	L	E	W	L	G	V	I	W	-	-	-	S	G	G	N	T	D	Y	N	T
38P1'CL	L	E	W	V	S	A	I	G	-	-	-	T	A	G	D	T	Y	Y	P	G
225RH _A	L	E	W	L	G	V	I	W	-	-	-	S	G	G	N	T	D	Y	N	T
225RH _B																				
225RH _C																				
225RH _D																				
225RH _E																				

Figure 22: continued...

[illegible]

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US96/09847

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL :Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/133.1, 143.1, 178.1; 435/240.27, 252.3, 320.1; 514/13, 17; 530/326, 330, 387.3, 388.2, 391.7; 536/23.1, 23.53

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, medline, cancerlit, biosis, embase

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	Journal of Cell Science, Volume 106, issued 1993, U. Vinkemeier et al., "The globular head domain of titin extends into the center of the sarcomeric M band", pages 319-330, especially ramino acid residues 208-212 of Figure 3, page 323.	1, 14, 16-17
Y	Journal of Biological Chemistry, Volume 264, No.1, issued 05 January 1989, R. Taub et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody against the Platelet Fibrinogen Receptor Contains a Sequence That Mimics a Receptor Recognition Domain in Fibrinogen", pages 259-265, especially amino acid residues 50-65 of Figure 2, page 261.	1-2, 14-15

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"E" earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"&" document member of the same patent family
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search

06 SEPTEMBER 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

03 OCT 1996

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

NANCY A. JOHNSON

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

 International application No.
 PCT/US96/09847

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US,A 4,943,533 (MENDELSON ET AL.) 24 July 1990, see column 8, line 40- column 9, line 26.	1-2, 14-15; 18-45, 48-66, 68-91
X	Journal of the National Cancer Institute, Volume 85, No. 16, issued 18 August 1993, J. Baselga et al., Antitumor Effects of Doxorubicin in Combination With Anti-epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies", pages 1327-1333, see entire document and last paragraph of page 1332.	23-25 -----
Y		18-22, 26-45, 48-66, 68-91
Y	US,A 5,225,539 (WINTER) 06 July 1993, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Nature, Volume 342, issued 21/28 December 1989, C. Chothia et al., "Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable regions", pages 877-883, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Cancer Research, Volume 53, issued 15 February 1993, K. Sato et al., "Reshaping a Human Antibody to Inhibit the Interleukin 6-dependent Tumor Cell Growth", pages 851-856, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, Volume 89, issued May 1992, Carter et al. "Humanization of an anti-p185HER2 antibody for human cancer therapy" pages 4285-4289, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	WO, A 92/22653 (GENENTECH, INC.) 23 December 1992, see entire document.	18-45, 49-66, 68-91
Y	Proc. Natl. acad. Sci., USA. Volume 85, issued February 1988, Yang et al., "Doxorubicin conjugated with a monoclonal antibody directed to a human melanoma-associated proteoglycan suppresses the growth of established tumor xenografts in nude mice", pages 1189-1193, see entire document.	18-22, 41-45, 62-71, 74-78, 81
Y	Biochimica et Biophysica Acta, Volume 714, issued 1981, Y. Graziani et al. "Regulation of Protein Kinases Activity by Quercetin in Ehrlich Ascites Tumor Cells", pages 415-421, see entire document.	72, 79
Y	Science, Volume 260, issued 25 June 1993, G. James et al., "Benzodiazepine Peptidomimetics: Potent Inhibitors of Ras Farnesylation in Animal Cells", pages 1937-1942, see entire document.	73, 80

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No:

PCT/US96/09847

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

Please See Extra Sheet.

1. ☒ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:

4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

☐

The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.

☐

No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US96/09847

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

IPC (6):

A61K 38/08, 38/10, 39/395; C07K 7/06, 7/08, 16/28; C12N 1/21, 15/11, 15/63, 15/70, 15/79, 15/85

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

US CL :

424/133.1, 143.1, 178.1; 435/240.27, 252.3, 320.1; 514/13, 17; 530/326, 330, 387.3, 388.2, 391.7; 536/23.1, 23.53

BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

Group I, claim(s) 1-13, 46-47, 50-62, 67 and 82, drawn to polypeptides lacking the constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody and methods of inhibiting the growth of tumor cells with said polypeptides. Claims 50-62 and 82 will be examined with Group I to the extent that they read on methods of inhibiting the growth of tumor cells utilizing polypeptides.

Group II, claim(s) 14-17, drawn to DNA encoding polypeptides lacking the constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody.

Group III, claim(s) 18-45, 62, 66, 82 and 91, drawn to molecules having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule. Claims 62 and 82 will be examined with Group III to the extent that they read on the molecules of claims 44 and 45.

Group IV, claim(s) 48-49, 50-61, 63-65, 68-81 and 83, drawn to a method of inhibiting the growth of tumor cells with molecules that contain a constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule. Claim 50-61 will be examined with Group IV to the extent that they read on a method on inhibiting tumor cell growth with said molecules.

Group V, claim(s) 84-90, drawn to DNA encoding a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody, the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule.

The inventions listed as Groups I-V do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: The corresponding special technical feature of Group I not recited in Groups II-V is a polypeptide which lacks a constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody and its use to inhibit the growth of tumor cells. The corresponding special technical feature of Group II not recited in Groups I and III-V is the DNA encoding a polypeptide which lacks a constant region and variable light chain region of an antibody. The corresponding special technical feature of Group III not recited in Groups I-II and IV-V is a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule. The corresponding special technical feature of Group IV not recited in Groups I-III and V is the method of using a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule to inhibit the growth of tumor cells. The corresponding special technical feature of Group V not recited in Groups I-IV is the DNA molecule encoding a molecule having the constant region of a human antibody and the hypervariable region of monoclonal antibody 225 conjugated to an effector molecule.